



tense



comparative



Aa



noun



DK 新视觉
ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

人人学英语

英 书

英国DK出版社 著 郭东波 译
北京师范大学MTI教育中心 总校译



conditional



negative



verb



一套书搞定英语



中国出版集团
中译出版社

DK 新 视 觉
ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

人人学英语

英语语法全书



英国DK出版社 著 郭东波 译
北京师范大学MTI教育中心 总校译



中国出版集团
中译出版社

英式英语顾问

黛安·霍尔（Diane Hall），应用语言学硕士，培训师、编辑、作家、出版人。曾在多家知名英语出版社出版通识课程书籍和语法书籍，从事英语语言教学已三十余年，现于英国开放大学任副讲师，主讲英语语法和功能语言学。

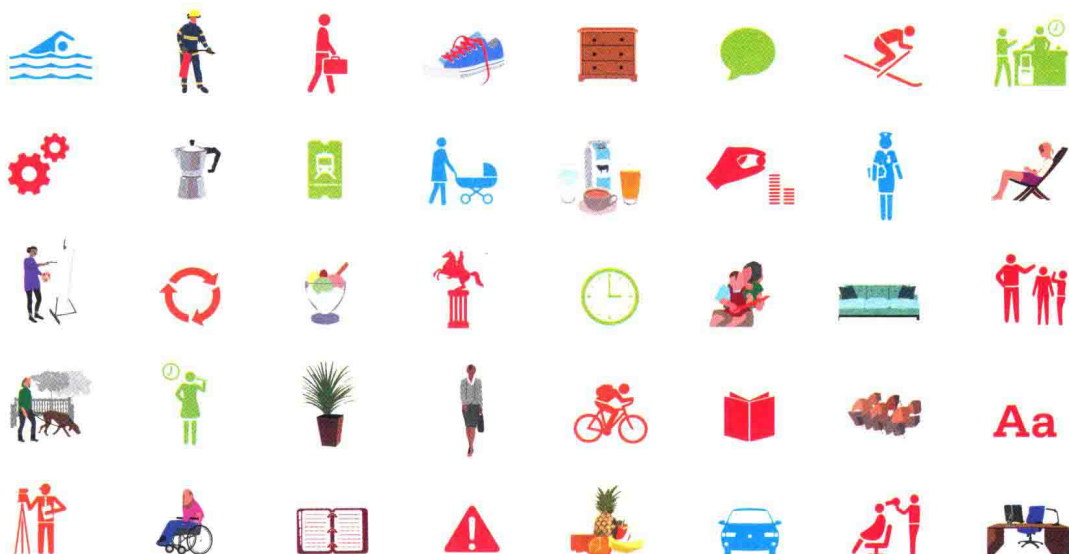
美式英语顾问

苏珊·巴德（Susan Barduhn），美国佛蒙特州国际学校教授、国际英语教师协会主席、英国文化教育协会顾问及美国国务院顾问。英语教学、写作及教师培训经验丰富，教学足迹遍及四大洲，编写并出版了多部作品。

DK 新视觉
ENGLISH FOR EVERYONE

人人学英语

英语语法全书





Penguin
Random
House

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

DDK新视觉·人人学英语英语语法全书 / 英国DK出版社著 ; 郭东波译. — 北京 : 中译出版社, 2018.7
ISBN 978-7-5001-5624-6

I. ①D… II. ①英… ②郭… III. ①英语—语法—自学参考资料 IV. ①H314

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2018)第123980号

(著作权合同登记: 图字01-2017-8912号)

出版发行: 中译出版社

地址: 北京市西城区车公庄大街甲4号物华大厦6层

电话: (010) 68359303; 68359101(发行部);

68357328(编辑部)

传真: (010) 68357870

邮编: 100044

电子邮箱: book@ctph.com.cn

网址: http://www.ctph.com.cn

总策划: 张高里

策划编辑: 刘永淳 于建军

责任编辑: 郭宇佳 张孟词 王烨

校审: 赵冬梅

排版: 北京杰瑞腾达科技发展有限公司

印刷: 鹤山雅图仕印刷有限公司

经销: 新华书店

规格: 787mm×1092mm 1/16

张: 22

字数: 260千字

版次: 2018年7月第一版

印次: 2018年7月第一次

ISBN 978-7-5001-5624-6

定价: 99.80元

版权所有 侵权必究

中译出版社

A WORLD OF IDEAS:
SEE ALL THERE IS TO KNOW

www.dk.com

目录

01	一般现在时	8
02	一般现在时否定句	12
03	一般现在时疑问句	14
04	现在进行时	16
05	现在时总览	20
06	祈使句	22
07	一般过去时	24
08	一般过去时否定句	28
09	一般过去时疑问句	30
10	过去进行时	32
11	现在完成时	34
12	现在完成进行时	38
13	过去完成时	40
14	过去完成进行时	42
15	“used to”和“would”	44
16	过去时总览	46
17	“going to”引导的将来时	48

18	“will” 引导的将来时	50	37	宾语疑问句和主语疑问句	102
19	现在时表将来	54	38	礼貌问句	104
20	将来进行时	56	39	附加疑问句	106
21	将来完成时	60	40	简短问句	108
22	过去将来时	62	41	简短回答	110
23	将来时总览	64	42	疑问句总览	112
24	被动语态	66	43	间接引语	114
25	过去时被动语态	68	44	间接引语的时态	116
26	将来时被动语态	72	45	转述动词	120
27	含有情态动词的被动语态	74	46	对否定句的间接引述	122
28	其他被动语态结构	76	47	间接问句	124
29	条件句	78	48	间接引语总览	128
30	其他条件句	84	49	动词类型	130
31	条件句总览	86	50	行为动词和状态动词	132
32	未来可能性	88	51	不定式和分词	134
33	用“wish”表示遗憾	90	52	动词搭配	138
34	疑问句的构成	94	53	及物动词搭配	142
35	疑问词	98	54	不及物动词搭配	145
36	特殊疑问句	100	55	短语动词	146

56	情态动词	152	75	量词	202
57	情态动词表示能力	154	76	表示近似数量的词语	208
58	情态动词表示许可、要求以及提供帮助	156	77	人称代词	210
59	情态动词表示劝告和建议	158	78	反身代词	212
60	情态动词表示义务	162	79	不定代词	216
61	情态动词表示推测	164	80	所有格	220
62	情态动词表示可能性	166	81	限定性关系从句	226
63	冠词	168	82	非限定性关系从句	228
64	冠词总览	174	83	其他关系从句	230
65	“this / that / these / those”	176	84	后接“-ever”的疑问词	232
66	“no / none”	180	85	“there”	234
67	“each / every”	182	86	引导词“it”	238
68	“either / neither / both”	184	87	强调	240
69	单数名词和复数名词	188	88	倒装	242
70	可数名词和不可数名词	190	89	省略	244
71	主谓一致	192	90	不定式省略	246
72	抽象名词和具体名词	194	91	替代	250
73	复合名词	196	92	形容词	252
74	数词	198	93	等级形容词和非等级形容词	256

94	形容词比较级	258	113	连词总览	312
95	比较级连用	263	114	前缀	314
96	“as... as”表示比较	266	115	后缀	316
97	形容词最高级	268	116	容易混淆的短语	320
98	方式副词	272	117	表示顺序和组织语言	322
99	副词的比较级和最高级	274	118	纠正观点和转换话题	324
100	程度副词	276	119	论述观点和留余地	326
101	时间副词	280	120	调节会话节奏	328
102	频度副词	282			
103	“so”和“such”	284	参考		330
104	“enough”和“too”	286	术语表		350
105	介词	288	致谢		352
106	地点介词	290			
107	时间介词	292			
108	其他介词	296			
109	依存介词	298			
110	并列连词	302			
111	从属连词	306			
112	其他连接词	310			

01 一般现在时

一般现在时用于陈述简单事实、谈论反复发生的事情以及描述客观真理。

参见：

现在进行时 4 现在时表将来 19
频度副词 102

1.1 一般现在时

一般现在时句子多使用动词原形（不定式去掉“to”）。

I **eat** lunch at noon every day.

“to eat” 的原形。

一般现在时句子中经常出现表示频率的词语。



She **eats** lunch at 2pm every day.

当主语是“he”“she”“it”时，动词原形后要加“-s”。



更多例证

We **drink** coffee every morning.



We **start** work at 9am.



They **leave** work at 5pm.



She **drinks** coffee every morning.



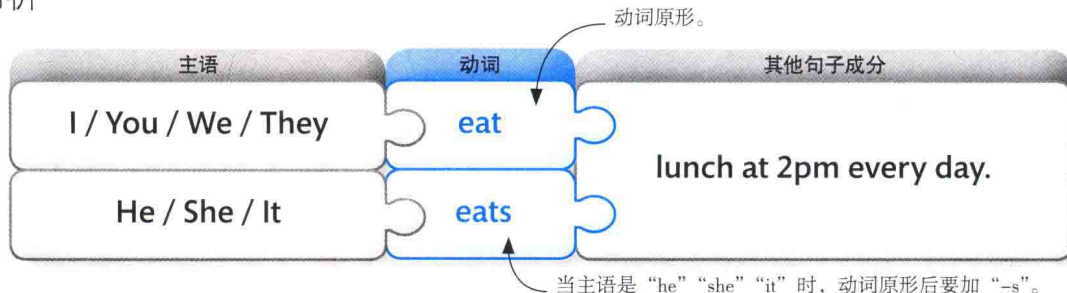
He **starts** work at 11am.



Rob **leaves** work at 7pm.



语法剖析



1.2 “-S” 和 “-ES” 词尾

若动词以 “-sh” “-ch” “-o” “-ss” “-x” “-z” 结尾，且动词所在句子的主语是 “he” “she” “it” 时，动词词尾要加 “-es”。

I **go** to bed.

He **goes** to bed.

以 “-o” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

I **finish** work.

He **finishes** work.

以 “-sh” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

I **watch** TV.

She **watches** TV.

以 “-ch” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

I **cross** the road.

She **crosses** the road.

以 “-ss” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

I **fix** cars.

She **fixes** cars.

以 “-x” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

Their phones **buzz** all day.

His phone **buzzes** all day.

以 “-z” 结尾的动词，要加 “-es”。

更多例证

Tom **does** the dishes every evening.



He **washes** the windows on Fridays.



She **teaches** English to six students.



He **blushes** when he's embarrassed.



⚠ 常见错误 一般现在时的构成

当句子主语是 “he” “she” “it” 或某人的名字时，动词词尾要加 “-s” 或 “-es”。

He **starts** work at 11am. ✓

He **start** work at 11am. ✗

动词原形 “start” 后要加 “-s”。

只有当主语是 “I” “you” “we” 和 “they” 时，“start” 后不加 “-s”。

一般现在时句子中无须添加助动词 “do”。

一般在造疑问句和否定句时才使用 “do”。

I **eat** lunch at noon every day. ✓

I **do eat** lunch at noon every day. ✗

一般在造疑问句和否定句时才使用助动词 “do”。

1.3 一般现在时中的“BE”

“be”是很重要的不规则动词，
在一般现在时中有多种形式。



I am 25 years old.

You are a chef.

He is happy.

主语是“we”和“they”
时，也要用“are”。

主语是“she”和“it”
时，也要用“is”。

语法剖析

主语	“BE”	其他句子成分
I	am	happy.
You	are	
He / She / It	is	
We / They	are	

更多例证

I am a doctor.



They are students.



My grandma is 92 years old.



可以用缩略形式。
We're late for work.



He's American.



Ruby's seven years old.



1.4 一般现在时中的“HAVE”

“have”是不规则动词，它的第三人称单数形式是“has”，而不是“haves”。

I have a garage.



当主语是“he”“she”“it”时，
使用第三人称单数“has”。

She has a yard.



语法剖析

主语	“HAVE”	宾语
I You We They	have	a garage.
He She It	has	

更多例证

I have a car.



The cat has a new collar.



You have a sister.



He has a cold.



I have a painful back.



Thomas has a driving lesson today.



They have the same dress.



Jack has a bad headache.



They have a new baby.



Sarah has coffee with Tom every Tuesday.



02 一般现在时否定句

含有“be”动词的一般现在时句子变否定句时，否定词“not”要放在“be”动词之后；含有其他动词的句子需使用助动词“do not”或“does not”。

参见：

一般现在时 1 现在时总览 5
动词类型 49

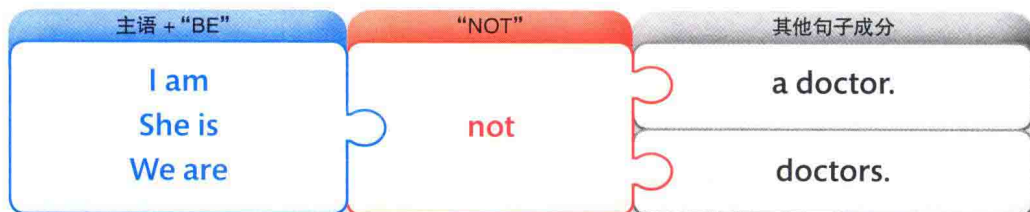
2.1 含有“BE”动词的否定句

肯定句和否定句中的“be”动词形式一样，不同点在于否定句中有“not”。

I am a farmer. **I am not** a doctor.

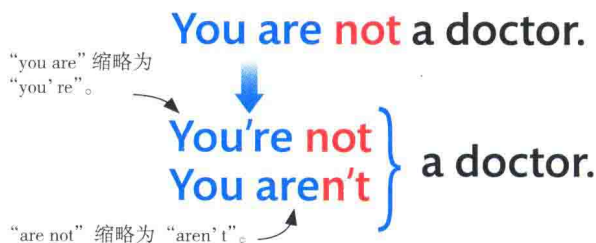


语法剖析



2.2 否定词缩略

“is not”和“are not”有两种缩略方式：一种是主语和谓语动词缩略；另一种是谓语动词和“not”缩略。两种缩略形式意思一样。



更多例证

I’m not a teacher.

不能用“I amn’t”。

He’s not
He isn’t } a farmer.

They’re not
They aren’t } American.

2.3 其他动词的一般现在时否定句

句子的动词如果不是“be”，变否定句时应在相应动词前加“do not”或“does not”。

I **work** outside.

I **do not** **work** outside.



He **works** inside.

He **does not** **work** inside.



用动词原形。

语法剖析

主语	"DO / DOES" + "NOT"	动词原形	其他句子成分
I / You / We / They	do not	work	outside.
He / She / It	does not	work	outside.

无论主语是什么，句中动词均用原形。

更多例证



You **do not** **have** a computer.

We **don't** **start** work at 8am.



He **does not** **live** in Los Angeles.

He **doesn't** **have** a car.



“doesn't” 是 “does not” 的缩略形式。

⚠ 常见错误 一般现在时否定句的构成

即使否定句的主语是“he”“she”或“it”，主要动词也要用原形。

He **does not** **work** outside. ✓

He does not **works** outside. ✗

03 一般现在时疑问句

含有“be”动词的一般现在时句子变疑问句时，要将“be”动词和主语位置互换。其他句子则需要使用助动词“do”或“does”，助动词放在主语前。

参见：

一般现在时 1 疑问句的构成 34
疑问词 35 特殊疑问句 36

3.1 含有“BE”的一般现在时疑问句

将含有“be”动词的一般现在时句子变成疑问句时，只需把“be”动词和主语位置对调。

在陈述句中，主语在动词之前。
You are Canadian.

Are you Canadian?

在疑问句中，动词移动到句首。 主语在动词之后。



语法剖析

“BE”	主语	其他句子成分
Am	I	Canadian?
Is	he / she / it	
Are	you / we / they	

更多例证

Am I on time?



Is he your brother?



在特殊疑问句中，疑问词放在动词之前。
Where are we?



Am I on the list?



Is it time to leave?



Are they friendly?



3.2 使用“DO”和“DOES”构成疑问句

不含“be”动词的句子，变疑问句时需用“do”或“does”开头。此时，不要调换主要动词和主语的位置。

You work in an office.

Do you work in an office?

句子主语是“I”“you”
“we”“they”时，疑问
句句首用“do”。

She works in a school.

Does she work in a school?

句子主语是“he”
“she”“it”时，疑
问句句首用“does”。

主要动词用原形。

语法剖析

“DO / DOES”

主语

动词原形

其他句子成分

Do

I / you / we / they

work

in an office?

Does

he / she / it

疑问句的动词后面不加“-s”
或“-es”。

更多例证

Do they live in Paris?



Do you usually finish work at 4pm?



Does Tom get up at 6am?



When does the party start?



在特殊疑问句中，要把疑问词
放在“do”或“does”之前。

❗ 常见错误 一般现在时疑问句的构成

不要在疑问句中的动词原形后加“-s”或“-es”，即使主语是第三人称单数（“he”“she”或“it”），也应使用动词原形。

Does he finish work on time? ✓

疑问句中的主要动词始终
使用原形。

Does he finishes work on time? ✗

不要在疑问句的主要动词后
加“-s”或“-es”。

04 现在进行时

现在进行时由“be”动词和现在分词构成，用于描述现在正在发生的动作。

参见：

一般现在时 1

行为动词和状态动词 50 不定式和分词 51

4.1 现在进行时

现在进行时用于描述正在发生的、持续的动作。

这里的动词使用一般现在时，描述的是重复发生的动作或重复出现的情况。

Julie usually wears jeans, but today **she is wearing** a dress.

现在进行时句子要用“be”动词。

这里是现在进行时，描述的是此时此刻正在发生的事情。



语法剖析



现在分词。

更多例证

We are walking the dog.



They're fighting with each other.



He is washing the dishes.



She's relaxing at the moment.



They are talking on their phones.

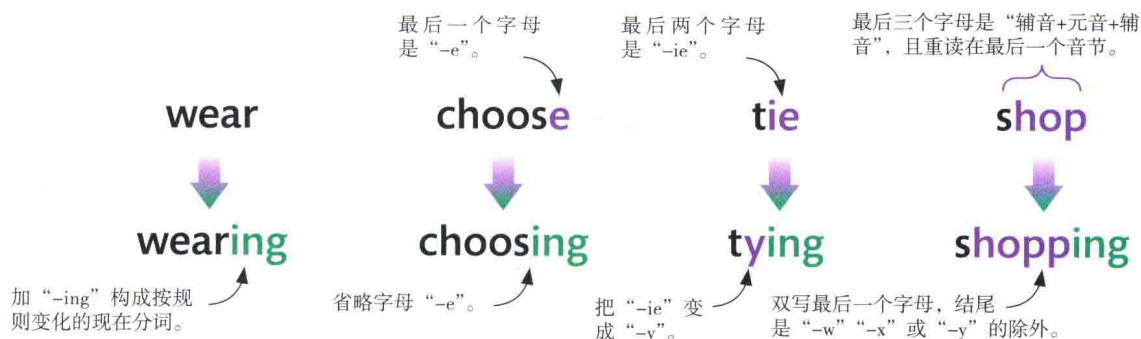


It's raining a lot outside.



4.2 现在分词拼写规则

现在分词由动词原形加“-ing”构成。
部分分词拼写规则略有不同。



更多例证



They're **opening** a store next week.



My uncle is **writing** a novel.



Harry is always **lying** to his mother.



Terry is **mopping** the floor.



I am **cutting** some apples.



My mother is **baking** us a cake.

提示

现在分词和名词拼写规则相同。

⚠ 常见错误 进行时中的状态动词

行为动词可用于一般时和进行时。状态动词用于进行时的情况不常见。

行为动词

状态动词



I **read** every day. ✓

I **am reading** right now. ✓



I **own** two cars. ✓

I **am owning** two cars. ✗

4.3 现在进行时疑问句

将现在进行时句子变为疑问句，要把主语和“be”动词的位置进行调换。



语法剖析



更多例证

Are they going to the park?



Is he cycling to work?



Is she eating pizza?



Are they working late?



可将疑问词“what”“where”和“how”置于动词前，构成特殊疑问句。

Where are we going today?



Are you coming to the party?



What are you eating for dinner?



Is it raining outside?



4.4 现在进行时否定句

将现在进行时句子变否定句时，要在“be”动词后加“not”。

He is wearing a tie, but he { is not
isn't } wearing a hat.

“be”动词后加“not”构成否定句，可以用省略形式。

变为否定句后，现在分词形式不变。



语法剖析



现在分词形式不变。

更多例证

He isn't walking the dog.



We aren't taking the bus today.



They aren't singing well today.



You aren't doing your job!



She isn't cleaning up her bedroom.



James isn't reading his book.



They aren't looking where they're going.



We aren't eating out this week.



He isn't playing football today.



You aren't doing well at school this year.



05 现在时总览

5.1 一般现在时和现在进行时

一般现在时 用于表述一成不变的情况、经常发生的事情、客观真理、重复进行的动作以及延续的状态。

客观真理。
The sun **rises** in the East.



现在进行时 用于表述临时情况、当前反复进行的动作以及目前正在延续着的状态。

临时情况。
It **is raining** in San Francisco right now.



5.2 现在时疑问句

一般现在时 带有“be”动词的疑问句与含有其他动词的疑问句的构成方式不同。

Are you English?
“be” 动词位于主语之前。

Do you speak English?
主语前要添加“do”或“does”。

现在进行时 疑问句只有一种构成方式。

Is it raining?
“be” 动词位于主语之前。

⚠ 常见错误 一般现在时中的动词单复数

疑问句和否定句中的动词原形不加“-s”，即使主语是第三人称单数（“he” “she” 或 “it”）也是如此。



肯定

肯定句中主语是单数时，动词后要加“-s”。

He **starts** work at 7am. ✓

He **start** work at 7am. ✗

只有主语是“I” “you” “we” 和 “they” 时，才使用动词原形。

一般现在时和现在进行时分别适用于不同的情境。两种时态的疑问形式和否定形式构成方式也不一样。

参见：

一般现在时 1 现在进行时 4 疑问句的构成 34
不定式和分词 51

重复进行的动作。
Giorgio **plays** golf every weekend.



Robert **lives** in London.



当前反复进行的动作。
Julia **is playing** lots of golf these days.



At the moment, Robert **is watching** TV.



5.3 现在时否定句

一般现在时 带有“be”动词的否定句与含有其他动词的否定句的构成方式不同。

I am **not** French.

在“be”动词后加“not”。

I **do not** speak French.

在主语和主要动词之间加“do not”或“does not”。

现在进行时 否定句只有一种构成方式。

It is **not** raining.

在“be”动词后加“not”。

疑问

在疑问句中，动词始终使用原形。

Does he **finish** work on time? ✓

Does he **finishes** work on time? ✗

在疑问句中，主要动词后不能加“-s”或“-es”。

否定

在否定句中，动词使用原形。

He does not **work** weekends. ✓

He does not **works** weekends. ✗

在否定句中，主要动词后不能加“-s”或“-es”。

06 祈使句

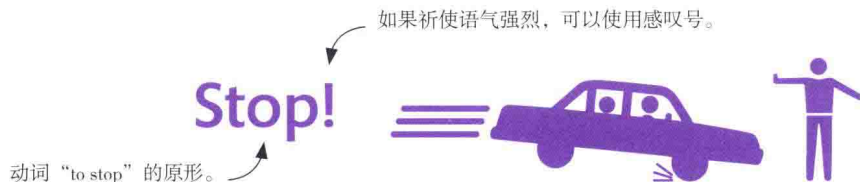
祈使句用于发出命令或提出要求，还可以用于发出警示或作出指示。

参见：

动词类型 49 情态动词表示劝告和建议 59
不定代词 79

6.1 祈使句

祈使句中的动词要使用原形（不定式去掉“to”）。



更多例证

Get up.



Be careful!



Give that to me.



Eat your breakfast.



Help!



Read this book.



6.2 否定祈使句

祈使句变否定句时，动词前加“do not”或“don't”。

Do not
Don't } turn right.



更多例证

Don't eat that cake.



I've just painted that door.
Don't touch it.



Don't rush. I'm not in a hurry.



Don't sit there. That chair is broken.



6.3 带主语的祈使句

祈使句一般没有主语，但有时为了使祈使对象更明确，会用名词或代词充当主语。

Everybody sit down.



更多例证

Phillip, come here.



You stay there.



可以用“you”充当祈使句的主语，表示强调。

Someone open the window.



Have fun, Anne.



主语还可以置于句末。

6.4 礼貌请求

在英语中，使用祈使句显得粗鲁，可以添加其他词语让句子变得礼貌些。

Please close the door.



句首加“please”，可以使句子更加礼貌。

Just give me a minute, please.



“just”可放在祈使句句首。

“please”也可以放在祈使句句末。

Do come in.



把“do”放在祈使句动词之前，可以使句子更加正式。

6.5 用“LET’S”提建议

“let’s”可用来提建议，提议对方和自己一起做某事。

It's sunny today. Let's go out.



原形。

It's cold. Let's not go out.



“let’s”后面加“not”构成否定句。

07 一般过去时

一般过去时用于描述发生在过去某个特定时间点并且已经完成的动作，是英语中最常用的过去时态。

参见：

一般过去时否定句 8 一般过去时疑问句 9
现在完成时 11

7.1 一般过去时中的规则动词

规则动词词尾添加“-ed”后
即可用于一般过去时。



星期二



今天

Walter **washed** his car on Tuesday.

动词后加“-ed”。

过去特定的时间点。

语法剖析

大多数一般过去时句子的动词不会因为主语改变而变换形式。



无论主语是什么，动词形式均不改变。

更多例证



Last night, I **watched** a documentary about Italy.

Heather **cleaned** her bedroom last weekend before the party.



Last Friday I **danced** with friends.

Tom **shaved** off his beard yesterday.



Tom usually drives to work, but yesterday he **walked** instead.

After work, Nia **listened** to music and **started** reading a new book.



7.2 动词过去式的拼写规则

所有规则动词在变过去式时，均在词尾加“-ed”，但有些动词拼写时略有不同。

wash
↓
washed

大多数规则动词
直接加“-ed”。

最后一个字母是“-e”。

dance
↓
danced

只需要添加“-d”。

最后一个字母是
“-y”，且前一个
音节是辅音。

try
↓
tried

去掉“-y”
加“-ied”。

单词后三个字母是“辅音-元
音-辅音”的形式，且单词重
读在最后一个音节。

stop
↓
stopped

双写最后一个辅音字母，
然后加“-ed”。

更多例证


jump
↓
jumped


arrive
↓
arrived


carry
↓
carried


drop
↓
dropped


work
↓
worked


save
↓
saved


cry
↓
cried


hop
↓
hopped


play
↓
played


decide
↓
decided


hurry
↓
hurried


step
↓
stepped

7.3 一般过去时中的不规则动词

一些动词的过去式不以“-ed”结尾。这类动词的变化没有规则。

“went”是“go”的过去式。

I **went** swimming yesterday.



昨天



今天

常见的不规则动词的过去式

go



went

have



had

do



did

put



put

come



came

see



saw

更多例证

I **swam** in the 500m race.



Sam **ate** two pizzas.



I **came** to the US in 1980.



We **went** to the zoo last week.



We **saw** some rare birds.



They **drank** all the lemonade.



I **did** really well in school.



They **had** a great vacation.



Steve **put** his cup on the table.



Sheila **drove** to the park.



7.4 一般过去时中的“BE”

“be”是不规则动词，且是唯一的随主语不同而变换过去式形式的动词。

The traffic **was** bad, so we **were** late for school.



过去



现在

语法剖析

“be”的过去式会因主语不同而不同。

主语	“BE”	其他句子成分
I	was	late for school.
You	were	
He / She	was	
We / They	were	

更多例证

He was a doctor for 40 years.



We were at the library yesterday.



She was a Broadway star in the 1960s.



There were lots of people at the party.



There was a party last night.



They were at the movies last week.



08 一般过去时否定句

一般过去时否定句用于表述过去没有发生的事情。除了含有“be”动词的句子外，其他句子的构成形式都一样。

参见：

一般过去时 7 一般现在时否定句 2
动词类型 49

8.1 一般过去时否定句

一般过去时句子变否定句时，要在主要动词前加“didn't”或“did not”，句中的主要动词无须使用过去式。

I **played** tennis last week, but I **didn't play** yesterday.



上星期

“played” 是过去式。

在否定句中，动词原形前加“didn't”。



昨天



今天

语法剖析

主语

I

“DID NOT / DIDN'T”

didn't

动词原形

go

其他句子成分

swimming.

不管主语是什么，否定句中的助动词都用“didn't”“did not”。

在一般过去时否定句中，主要动词用原形。

更多例证



You **didn't like** the beach.

I **didn't eat** all the chocolate!



They **didn't buy** the big, expensive car.

Emily **didn't enjoy** the theme park as much as Zara.



She **did not talk** to anyone before the exam.

只有在表示强调或正式语境中才使用“did not”。

Hugh **did not cycle** to work today.



⚠ 常见错误 一般过去时否定句中的动词原形

构成一般过去时否定句时，要用 “didn’t” 加主要动词的原形。注意：此时主要动词要用原形，不能用过去式。

“play” 应使用动词原形。

I **didn't play** tennis last night. ✓

只有在一般过去时肯定句中，主要动词才用过去式。

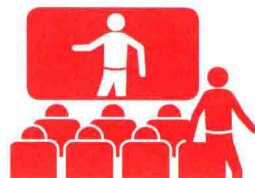
I **didn't played** tennis last night. ✗

8.2 含有“BE”动词的一般过去时否定句

含有 “be” 动词的一般过去时句子变否定句时，要在 “was” 或 “were” 后加 “not”。

The book **was** interesting, but the movie **was not**.

The books **were** great, but the movies **were not**.



语法剖析

主语	“WAS / WERE”	“NOT”	其他句子成分
The movie	was	not	interesting.
The movies	were	not	interesting.

更多例证

Kate **was not** feeling well.



My parents **were not** pleased.



The cat **wasn't** in the house.



The computers **weren't** working.



“was not” 常缩略成 “wasn’t”。

“were not” 常缩略成 “weren’t”。

09 一般过去时疑问句

一般过去时疑问句由“did”辅助构成。含有“be”动词的一般过去时句子在变疑问句时，要把“was”或“were”与主语对调。

参见：

一般过去时 7 疑问句的构成 34
动词类型 49

9.1 一般过去时疑问句

用一般过去时进行提问时，需借助“did”加动词原形。

陈述句的主要动词用过去式。

They **bought** a new car.



She **visited** her parents last week.

Did they **buy** a new car?

“did”放在主语之前。

主要动词用原形。

Who **did** she **visit** last week?

可以添加疑问词，构成特殊疑问句。

语法剖析



更多例证

Did they **have** a good time?



Did you **read** a book on the beach?



Did Ray **drink** all the milk?



Where **did** she **meet** her friends?



添加疑问词后成为特殊疑问句。

When **did** he **go** to the gym?



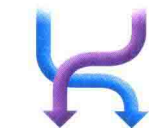
Why **did** you **buy** so much food?



9.2 含有“BE”动词的一般过去时疑问句

将含有“be”动词的一般过去时句子变疑问句时，需将“was”或“were”与主语对调。

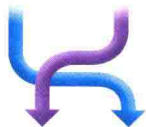
陈述句的主语在动词之前。
She was excited.



Was she excited?

在疑问句中，主语和动词位置对调。

You were excited.



Were you excited?



语法剖析

“WAS / WERE”	主语	其他句子成分
Was	I / he / she / it	excited?
Were	you / we / they	

更多例证

Was **he** good at playing tennis?



Was **there** any cake at the party?



Were **they** surprised by you?



Were **we** the last ones to arrive?



Why was **she** late for the party?



What were **the lectures** about?



What was **that song** called?



What was **the weather** like?



10 过去进行时

英语的过去进行时用于表述在过去某一时间正在发生的事情或正在进行的动作。由“was”或“were”和现在分词构成。

参见：

一般过去时 7
不定式和分词 51

10.1 过去进行时

英语的过去进行时用于表述在过去某个时间正在进行的动作。

一般过去时表示这个动作过去发生过，但现在已经结束了。

I **knocked** on your door at noon, but you weren't at home. What were you doing?



上午11:30

下午12:00

下午12:30



I **was eating** lunch with a friend.

过去进行时描述的是持续的动作。

过去进行时表述的是过去曾经持续过一段时间，但现在已经结束了的动作。

更多例证

This time last week, **we were hiking** in Peru.



He didn't go out because **he was working** late.



When I lost my camera, **we were swimming** in the sea.



The last time I saw him, **he was washing** his car.



语法剖析

“was”或“were”后接现在分词，构成过去进行时。



需根据主语确定使用“was”或“were”。

主要动词后加“-ing”。

10.2 过去进行时用于场景设定

讲故事时，经常会用过去进行时进行场景设定或情境描述。



It was a beautiful day.

The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.
Children **were laughing** and **playing** in the street.

10.3 过去进行时和一般过去时

英语的过去进行时和一般过去时连用时，过去进行时描述的是持续时间较长、具有背景性质的行为，一般过去时描述的是持续时间较短、突发性的动作。

持续性的行为、背景性质的行为

突发性的动作、中断主要行为的动作

I **was taking** a photo when **a monkey grabbed** my camera.



更多例证

He **was sunbathing** when it **started** to rain.



She **was sleeping** when the phone **rang**.



I **was mowing** the lawn when you **called**.



I **was having** a bath when you **knocked**.



11 现在完成时

现在完成时用于表述前不久刚刚完成且对现在产生了影响的事情。由“have”和过去分词构成。

参见：

一般过去时 7 现在完成进行时 12
不定式和分词 51

11.1 现在完成时

现在完成时表述过去发生的事情时，用途有多种：

用于提供新讯息或新动态。

Hi! I have arrived in London!
My plane landed five minutes ago.



用于表述一段时间内持续出现的重复动作。

I have visited California every summer since I was 18.



用于表述在过去某个时间点开始并且一直持续到现在的动作。

Olivia has gone on a trip to Egypt.



更多例证

Look! **I've cooked** dinner for us.



You haven't cleared the table.
It's a mess!



John has just washed the dishes.



Have you cleaned up
your bedroom?



语法剖析



主语是“he”“she”
和“it”时用“has”。

11.2 规则动词的过去分词

规则动词的过去分词由动词原形后加“-ed”构成。

ask	→	asked
call	→	called
help	→	helped
need	→	needed
play	→	played
talk	→	talked
walk	→	walked
want	→	wanted
watch	→	watched
work	→	worked

11.3 不规则动词的过去分词

英语中有很多不规则的过去分词，这些分词有时看起来与其对应的动词原形差别很大。

be	→	been
buy	→	bought
come	→	come
do	→	done
have	→	had
give	→	given
go	→	gone
make	→	made
say	→	said
see	→	seen

⚠ 常见错误 过去式和过去分词

分清过去式和过去分词很重要。

I **have seen** lots of great things here. ✓

I have **saw** lots of great things here. ✗

“see” 的过去分词。

“see” 的过去式不能用在完成时句子中。

11.4 “GONE / BEEN”

“be” 和 “go”
均可用于现在完成时，表示去某个地方，但是两者表达的具体意思有差别。

I haven't seen Joan recently. Where is she?



She's **gone** to Florida.

她现在还在佛罗里达。



Hi, Joan. You're looking well.



Yes, I've **been** to Florida.

她先前去了佛罗里达，
但是现在已经回来了。



更多例证



Where's Ben?



He's **gone** to the mall.

You look relaxed.



Yes, **we've been** in Bermuda.
We had a great time.



Where's Ariana?



She's **gone** windsurfing.

Your hair looks great!



Thanks! I've just **been**
to the hair salon.

Where are Julie and Jack?



They've **gone** to see a play.

Where have you been?



We've been to visit Joan in the
hospital. She's not very well.

11.5 现在完成时和一般过去时

一般过去时用于描述过去特定时间发生的事情。
若未指明具体时间，句子则用现在完成时。

给出了特定日期“2010”，
所以使用一般过去时。

句中未指明特定日期，所以
使用现在完成时。

Have you ever
been to France?

Yes, I **visited**
Paris in 2010.

Yes, I **have visited**
Paris many times.



2010



现在



2003



2008



2010



2014



现在

更多例证

一般过去时

I **saw** a great movie last week.



Jo **didn't climb** Mount Fuji last year.



Madison **ate** too much last night.



现在完成时

I **haven't seen** that movie.



Saki **has climbed** Mount Fuji twice.



Jack **hasn't eaten** curry before.



11.6 美式英语中的现在完成时

在英式英语用现在完成时的情况下，
美式英语常用一般过去时。



No dessert for me! I **ate** too much. (US)

No dessert for me! I've **eaten** too much. (UK)



I can't find my passport. **Did you see** it? (US)

I can't find my passport. **Have you seen** it? (UK)

12 现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时用于描述过去某段时间内持续的、对现在依然有影响的动作。动作常发生在刚刚过去的某段时间内。

参见：

一般过去时 7

现在完成时 11 不定式和分词 51

12.1 现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时描述的是刚刚过去的某段时间内持续进行的动作。该动作可能刚刚结束，也可能还在继续。

现在完成进行时

I have been painting the house all day. I'm exhausted!

过去发生的动作常常对现在产生影响。



更多例证

“I have” 可以缩略成 “I’ve”。

I've been cooking this evening.
Now I have to do the dishes.



“he has” 可以缩略成 “he’s”。

He's been waiting for the bus for an hour.
He is going to be late for work.



语法剖析

主语

“HAS / HAVE”

“BEEN”

动词 + “-ING”

宾语

I

have

been

painting

the house.

根据主语确定使用
“have” 或 “has”。

无论主语是什么，此处
均使用 “been”。

主要动词后加 “-ing”。

12.2 现在完成进行时和现在完成时

现在完成进行时用于描述过去正在发生的事情。事情现在可能还在继续。

现在完成进行时
I've been fixing my car. I'm covered in oil.



现在完成时用于描述过去发生但现在已经结束的事情。

现在完成时
I've fixed my car. Now I can drive to work again.



更多例证

I've been cooking dinner.
It will be ready soon.



I've cooked dinner.
It's ready now.

Vicky has been running
today. Now she's really tired!



Vicky has just run a race.
Now she's receiving a medal.

I've been eating too
much cake. I must eat less!



I've eaten all the cake.
The plate is empty.

We've been looking at
houses. We want to move.



We've bought a new house.
We're moving in June.

13 过去完成时

在英语中，人们使用过去完成时和一般过去时描述过去不同时间发生的两个或多个事件。

参见：

一般过去时 7 现在完成时 11

过去完成进行时 14 不定式和分词 51

13.1 过去完成时

谈论发生在过去不同时间的两个事件时，用一般过去时描述距离现在较近的事件，用过去完成时描述较早发生的事件。

The train **had left** before we **arrived** at the station.



晚上8:10



晚上8:20

现在

Pablo **had gone** to work when I **knocked** on his door.



上午7:00



上午7:30

现在

语法剖析

“had” 后接过去分词构成过去完成时。

主语

“HAD”

过去分词

其他句子成分

The train

had

left

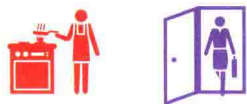
before we arrived at the station.

不管主语是什么，句中的“had”都不变。

动作发生在过去，故使用过去分词。

更多例证

He **had cooked** dinner before Sally **got back** from work.



She **had** already **read** the play by the time she **went** to see it.



The traffic **was** bad because a car **had broken down** on the road.



When we **arrived** at the stadium, the game **had** already **started**.



虽然动词过去式出现在句子的前半部分，但它所指代的依旧是发生较晚的动作。

13.2 现在完成时和过去完成时

现在完成时

现在完成时描述的是前不久刚刚完成的事情，事情对现在仍有影响。



一小时前



现在

I'm so excited.
I have just passed
my driving test.

过去完成时

过去完成时描述的是在过去的某一个时间点之前发生的事件。



之前的一小时



过去某时间



现在

I was so excited.
I had just passed
my driving test.

14 过去完成进行时

在英语中，人们使用过去完成进行时和一般过去时描述在过去某个事件或某个动作之前正在进行的动作。

参见：

一般过去时 7 现在完成进行时 12
不定式和分词 51

14.1 过去完成进行时

一般过去时描述的是过去已经完成的事件；过去完成进行时描述的是上述已完成事件之前重复进行的或持续发生的动作。

过去完成进行时

He **had been studying** English for two years before he **went** to London.

一般过去时



两年前

过去

现在

By the time Katie **arrived** home, she **had been driving** for six hours.



六小时前

过去

现在

语法剖析

过去完成进行时由“had been”加现在分词构成。

主语

“HAD BEEN”

动词 + “-ING”

其他句子成分

He

had been

studying

English for two years.

不管主语是什么，都用“had been”。

更多例证



She **decided** to buy a new car because her old one **hadn't been working** for weeks.



I **went** to see the doctor after I'd **been feeling** unwell for a few days.



The band **had been rehearsing** every day, so they **won** the competition.



I **had been training** to be a dancer until I **broke** my leg.

14.2 现在完成进行时和过去完成进行时

现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时用于描述此刻以前正在发生的事情或重复进行的动作。



两小时前



现在

I'm really thirsty.
I **have been cycling**
for two hours.

过去完成进行时

过去完成进行时用于描述过去的特定时间之前正在发生的事情或重复进行的动作。



之前两小时



过去

I **was** really thirsty.
I **had been cycling**
for two hours.



现在

“used to” 和 “would”

表述过去的习惯或状态时，常常使用 “used to” 或 “would”。这种结构经常用于比较过去和现在的不同状态。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7
过去进行时 10 频度副词 102

15.1 “USED TO”

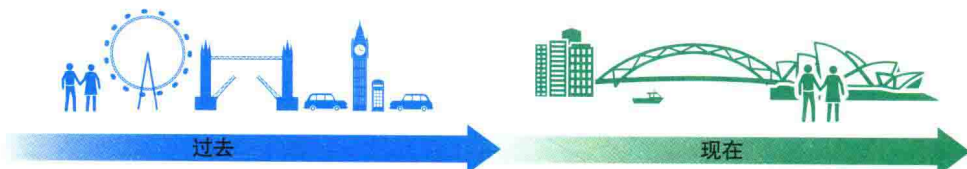
“used to” 可以与动词原形连用，表述过去的习惯。

表述过去的习惯。
We used to play tennis every day, but now we prefer golf.



“used to” 还可用于表述过去非特定时间内某种持续的状态。

表述过去的状态。
We used to live in London before we moved to Sydney.



更多例证

Did you use to ride a scooter when you were a student?



在疑问句和否定句中，“used” 要变成 “use”。
I didn't use to believe in ghosts until I visited a haunted house.



I used to eat lunch on my own, but now I sit with friends.



We didn't use to think England was cold until we moved here.



I used to eat meat, but now I'm a vegetarian.



I didn't use to be afraid of spiders until I visited Australia.



⚠ 常见错误 “USED TO” 和过去进行时

表述过去的习惯时，要用“used to”，不能用过去进行时。

We **used to** play lots of board games when we were younger. ✓

We **were playing** lots of board games when we were younger. ✗

过去进行时不能用来表述过去的习惯。

15.2 表示习惯的另一种方式

在书面语和正式会话中，可以用“would”替代“used to”，这种方式仅用于表示过去的习惯。此时，句中常常会有指示时间或频率的成分。

When I was younger, my family **would** go skiing once a year.

表述过去的习惯。



6年前



5年前



4年前

现在

更多例证



When I was little, we **would** go for a picnic every Saturday.



Whenever there were sports on TV, we just **wouldn't** do our homework.



When I was a student in college, I **would** spend as little as possible.



Before I moved abroad, I **wouldn't** try anything new.

⚠ 常见错误 “WOULD” 表状态

“would” 不能用于表述过去的状态。表示过去的状态时，要用“used to”。

We **used to** live in London before we moved to Sydney. ✓

We **would** live in London before we moved to Sydney. ✗

句中有状态动词表示过去的状态时，不能用“would”。

16 过去时总览

16.1 过去时

一般过去时 用于描述过去已经完成的单个动作。

Phil **washed** his car on Tuesday.

这是过去已经完成的动作，现在已经结束了。

过去进行时 用来描述发生在过去的持续性动作。

The last time I saw Phil, **he was washing** his car.

那时，他正在洗车。

现在完成时 用于描述开始于过去且现在尚未完成的某个动作或一系列动作，或者发生于过去但对现在依然有影响的动作。

Eve **has arrived** in London.

Eve现在还在伦敦，所以“到达”这个动作与现在依然有关系。

现在完成进行时 用来描述发生在过去且对现在依然有影响的持续性动作。

I have been painting the house all day. I'm exhausted!

这是对现在产生的影响。

16.2 一般过去时和现在完成时

一般过去时 用于描述过去已经完成的单个动作或事件。事件或动作对现在不再产生影响。



I **wrote** my essay about Ancient Greece.

论文已经写完了，所以用一般过去时。



I have written half of my essay, but I need to finish it.

论文尚未完成，所以用现在完成时。



I **lost** my keys, but I **found** them on my desk.

因为钥匙已经找到了，所以“丢钥匙”这个动作对现在已经没有影响了。



I have lost my keys. I can't find them anywhere!

钥匙现在还没找到，所以用现在完成时。

英语中有八种谈论过去的方式。其中，
区分一般过去时和现在完成时尤为重要。

参见：

一般过去时 7 现在完成时 11
不定式和分词 51

过去完成时 用于描述在过去某个动作或事件之前发生的动作或事件。

The game **had started** when
I arrived at the stadium.

过去完成进行时 用于描述在过去某个事件或某个动作之前正在持续的动作或事件。

I **had been feeling** unwell for
days, so I went to the doctor.

“used to” 和 “would” 用于描述过去重复发生但现在不再发生的动作。

I { **used to**
would } go to Spain every year.

“used to” 还可用于描述在过去不特定时间内持续着的，但现在已经改变了的状态。

I **used to** live in London.

“live” 是一种状态，
所以不能用 “would”。

16.3 主要语言点 叙事时态

叙事时态是用来讲故事的过去时态。

过去进行时 用于设定场景。 **一般过去时** 用于描述故事中的动作。

过去完成时 用于描述故事发生之前发生的事情。

A crowd of people **were celebrating** the New Year when one of the young men **kneeled down** in front of his girlfriend and **asked** her to marry him. He **had planned** everything beforehand.



“going to” 引导的将来时

英语的将来时由助动词辅助构成。最常用的一个结构是“going to”加主要动词原形。

参见：

“will” 引导的将来时 18
将来进行时 20 过去将来时 22

17.1 语法剖析

主语

“BE”

“GOING TO”

动词原形

其他句子成分

He

is

going to

buy

a new car.

17.2 “GOING TO” 表示未来计划

“going to” 所表述的未来将要发生的事情是经提前计划过的，而非说话时临时决定的。

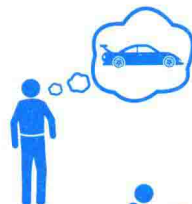
I'm **going to** buy a new car.

动词原形。

We are **going to** cook dinner tonight.

使用相应的“be”动词与主语进行搭配。

无论主语是什么，都用“going to”。



更多例证

I'm **going to** start reading this book soon.



Sam's **going to** get fit before his next birthday.



I'm **not going to** eat any chocolate this month.

“be” 动词后加 “not” 构成否定句。



We're **going to** cycle from Boston to Cape Cod next weekend.



17.3 “GOING TO” 用于作出预测

当前有相关证据时，“going to”可以用来作出预测。

Look at those clouds. It's **going to** rain soon.

有现实依据，故而可以进行预测。

用“going to”作出预测。



更多例证

Oh no! She's **going to** slip and fall over.



That hill is too steep. Jon is **going to** crash!



They're **going to** break a window if they're not careful.



Look! The waiter is **going to** drop those plates.



He's wearing a raincoat, so he's **not going to** get wet.



Oh dear, I think she's **going to** fall off that ladder!



17.4 带有“GOING TO”的疑问句

带“going to”的句子变疑问句时，要调换主语和“be”动词的位置。

Michelle is going to be at the meeting.



Is Michelle going to be at the meeting?

更多例证

Is Rhian going to come to work tomorrow?



Is Tim going to be at the party?



句首可以添加疑问词。
What are you going to wear to the party?



When is he going to get here?



“will” 引导的将来时

在英语中，一些将来时句子由“will”构成。“will”的用法有很多种，均与“going to”表示将来时的用法不同。

参见：

“going to”引导的将来时 17
不定式和分词 51

18.1 语法剖析



18.2 “WILL” 表示将来

英语中主要有四种使用“will”表示将来的方式：

作出预测，表述你认为将要发生的事。



Wait a few minutes. I think **it will stop** raining soon.

这个预测没有现实依据。

许诺为某人做某事。



You look frozen. **I'll make** you some hot soup.

缩略形式。

作出保证。



We'll be there by eight. Don't worry!

表述自己刚刚作出的决定。



I know! **I'll buy** Aaron a surfboard for his birthday.

这个决定不是提前作出的。

提示

如果预测是基于现实依据作出的，或决定是在说话前就已经作出的，记得要使用“going to”。

18.3 “WILL” 用于作出预测

若没有现实依据，对未来进行预测要使用“will”。

This movie is great. You **will** love it.



没有依据表明这个人会喜欢这部电影。

更多例证

The mall **will** be so busy this afternoon.



They'll enjoy their trip to Venice.



Jane **will** **probably** like the new house. It's really nice.



She'll be really angry when she finds out.

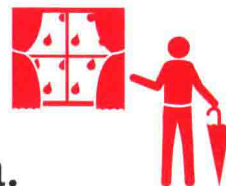


18.4 “WILL” 用于表述快速作出的决定

“will” 用于表述某人在说话时临时作出的决定，常常是对突发情况的应对措施。

Oh, it's raining! **I'll** take my umbrella.

“will” 说明决定是临时作出的。



更多例证

“will” 的否定形式是 “will not” 或 “won't”。

It's midnight. I **won't** walk home through the park.



This apple is delicious. **I'll** have another one.



前提情境和快速决定之间常用 “so” 连接。

There's no juice, so **I'll** have some water instead.



The car has broken down, so **I'll** have to walk to work.



18.5 “WILL” 用于表示许诺

“will” 还能用来许诺为某人做某事。

You seem busy. **I'll** pick the kids up from school today.



更多例证

I'll go to the post office for you if you want.



You must be starving! **I'll** make you a sandwich.



Sit down and relax, **I'll** make you a cup of tea.



Since you cooked, **I'll** do the dishes.



18.6 “WILL” 用于作出保证

“will” 还可以用来作出保证。

Don't worry, **I'll** be careful.



更多例证

We'll let you know as soon as your car's ready.



I'll feed the cat when I get home.



If you bring the food, **we'll** take care of the drinks.



I'll take care of everything while you're away.



Ben said **he'll** call us as soon as he gets home.



Don't worry, **I'll** lock the front door when I leave.



18.7 同时使用“THINK”和“WILL”

“think”和“will”可以同时使用，表明某个预测仅仅是个人观点，或用于说明某个决定并非最终决定。

“think”后可以加“that”，也可以省略不加。

这是一个不确定的预测。



I **think** that **we'll** have enough food for the party.



I'm tired. I **think** **I'll** go to bed.

这个决定不是最终的，还在考虑。

更多例证

It's cold outside, but we don't **think** **it'll** snow today.



在否定句中，要对“think”进行否定，而不是对“will”进行否定。

If we hurry, I **think** **we'll** get to the airport on time.



I **think** **I'll** cook chicken for dinner this evening.



I **think** **I'll** take the children ice-skating tomorrow.



18.8 “SHALL” 引导的将来时

在询问决定和提供帮助、建议时，用“shall”替代“will”。这种情况下，“shall”只跟“we”或“I”连用。这种用法在美式英语中非常少见。

Shall I pick you up or **shall we** meet at the restaurant?

此处“shall”用于表示提供帮助。

此处“shall”用于表示提出建议。



更多例证

Shall I cook chicken or beef tonight?



It's so hot in here. **Shall I** open a window?



I'm bored, **shall we** go out for a walk?



Shall we try to finish the gardening today?



19 现在时表将来

一般现在时和现在进行时可以表述已经计划好的未来将要发生的事情，句中常常会有指示将来时间的单词或短语。

参见：

一般现在时 1 现在进行时 4
时间介词 107

19.1 一般现在时表将来

一般现在时可以用
于表述已经安排好的
未来将要发生的
事情。



语法剖析

主语

The train

一般现在时

arrives

表示将来的时间短语

at 10pm tonight.

更多例证

Don't forget we **have** an early meeting tomorrow morning.



The next flight to New York **departs** at 6 this evening.



The concert **is** next Wednesday. I hope we're ready by then!



The bank **opens** late tomorrow because it's the weekend.



19.2 现在进行时表将来

现在进行时可以用来表述事先计划好的未来将要发生的事情。句中的时间标志词会指明事情具体是发生在现在还是将来。

“at the moment” 说明动作发生在现在。

现在进行时描述的是Dave现在正在做的事情。

At the moment Dave is working, but tomorrow he is playing golf.

“tomorrow” 说明动作发生在将来。

现在进行时描述的是已经计划好的未来将要发生的事情。



现在



明天

语法剖析

主语

Dave

现在进行时

is playing golf

表示将来时间的词语

tomorrow.

更多例证



Jack's playing soccer tomorrow.



I'm seeing a movie later.



Sue is studying this evening.



Lisa is playing golf tomorrow.



I'm having dinner with Mike next weekend.



Jay is meeting some friends tomorrow evening.



Tom and Samantha are getting married tomorrow.



I'm running a race for charity this weekend.

20 将来进行时

将来进行时可以由“will”或“going to”构成，描述的是未来某个时间点正在发生的事情或正在进行的动作。

参见：

现在进行时 4 “will”引导的将来时 18
不定式和分词 51

20.1 “WILL”引导的将来进行时

将来进行时描述的是未来某个时间点正在发生的事情或正在进行的动作。其中的“未来时间点”常常会被明确指出，事情往往在该时间点之前就已经开始且有可能持续下去。

现在进行时

Right now I'm **working** in a café.

In 10 years' time, I hope I **will be running** a bistro.

将来进行时



语法剖析

主语

I

“WILL BE”

will be

现在分词

running

宾语

a bistro.

更多例证

This time next week, we **will be walking** in the Andes.



Emma **will be starting** school in September.



20.2 带有“ANYWAY”的将来进行时

将来进行时还可用于表示事情的发生理所当然，或无论如何（*anyway*）都会发生的事情。

Oh no, I've run out of milk.



I can get some for you later.



No, please don't worry!



It's okay, I'll be **driving** past the store anyway.

更多例证



You can send the parcel here.
I'll be **waiting** in the house anyway.



I can give that to Freda for you.
I'll be **seeing** her for lunch.

“无论如何（*anyway*）”的意思已经暗含在这里了。

20.3 中性提问

将来进行时还可用于进行中性提问。中性提问用于询问信息而非提出要求。

中性提问

将来进行时。

Will you be **coming** into work tomorrow?

Yes, I will.

OK, let's talk about the report then.



要求

一般将来时。

Will you **come** into work tomorrow please?

Sure, no problem.



更多例证

Will you be **driving** past the post office later?



Will you be **attending** the meeting this afternoon?



20.4 用将来进行时谈论现在的事情

将来进行时还可以用来推测现在正在发生的事情。

Have you noticed that Andrew isn't at work today?

He'll be working on his presentation at home.

It's more likely that he'll be watching the golf on TV!



更多例证

Why isn't Xavier here today?

He'll be finishing off his report for the annual meeting.



Why is Nev late?

He'll be taking his children to school.



Where is Sarah?

She'll be studying in the library probably.



Is Phoebe at home?

No, she's not here. She'll be playing with Ciara at the park, probably.



Have you seen Roberta?

No, but she's going out later, so I think she'll be getting ready.



20.5 “GOING TO” 引导的将来进行时

构成将来进行时句子时，除了使用“will”，还可以使用“going to”，但“going to”结构并不常见。“going to”可以用于绝大多数将来进行时结构，除了用来推测现在正在发生的事情。

I can't come out this evening.
I'm going to be studying all night.



语法剖析

主语

“BE”

“GOING TO BE”

现在分词

其他句子成分

I

am

going to be

studying

all night.

更多例证

I want to go away on Saturday, but **I'm going to be working** all weekend.



I'd love to go out on Thursday, but **I'm going to be finishing** this essay.



Shall we have lunch next week? **I'm going to be visiting** your city.



I'm going to be staying with my husband's family for the holidays this year.



Do you want to go to a concert tonight? My wife **is going to be performing**.



At the lecture this evening, two politicians **are going to be talking** about crime.



21 将来完成时

将来完成时用于描述在未来某件事情之前结束或与其同时发生的事情。可以是一般时态，也可以是进行时。

参见：

不定式和分词 51
时间介词 107

21.1 将来完成时

将来完成时用于描述将在未来某时间点之前完成的动作或结束的事情。

“by” 和 “before” 意思相近。

They **will have built** the skyscraper **by** January.



语法剖析

主语	"WILL HAVE"	过去分词	宾语	时间短语
They	will have	built	the skyscraper	by January.

更多例证

Cai **will have read** all his course books by next week.



Sam **will have finished** the laundry by this afternoon.



The next time you see me, I **will have had** a haircut.



We're so late! The play **will have started** by the time we get there!



21.2 将来完成进行时

将来完成进行时可以用于推测某件事或某个动作的持续时间。在该时态中，说话者站在想象中的未来某个时间点对特定事情进行回望。

By July, I **will have been working** here for a year.



语法剖析

时间短语

By July,

主语

I

"WILL HAVE BEEN"

will have been

现在分词

working

其他句子成分

here for a year.

更多例证

By the time this is all ready, Andy **will have been cooking** all day!



By the time I arrive home, I **will have been driving** for six hours.



By this time next month, I **will have been studying** English for a year!



He **will have been waiting** for two hours by the time she arrives.



This case **will have been going on** for over a year before it is settled.



22 过去将来时

在英语中，有很多结构可以用于表述某人在过去某时对将来事情的思考。

参见：
过去进行时 10
不定式和分词 51

22.1 “WAS GOING TO” 引导的过去将来时

过去将来时用于对之前所作出的某个预测进行回顾。我们知道，“going to” 用于描述以现在时间为基准的未来事件，“was / were going to” 则用于描述以过去时间为基准的未来事件。



This traffic is awful! I think
I'm going to be late for work.

I thought **I was going to** be
late, but I'm right on time.

语法剖析

主语	“WAS / WERE”	“GOING TO”	原形	其他句子成分
I	was	going to	be	late.

更多例证

I **was going to** start a new book
today, but I didn't have time.



Delia **was going to** buy a new
dress, but she couldn't find one.



Mike **was going to** have a party,
but nobody could come.



We **were going to** buy a new
dog, but we decided to wait.



They **were going to** go home,
but they went dancing instead.

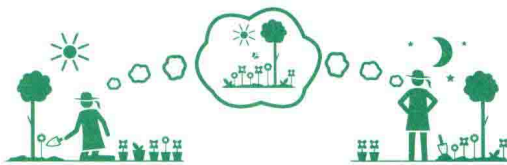


Sorry, I interrupted. **Were you**
going to say something?



22.2 “WOULD” 引导的过去将来时

我们知道,“will”用于描述以现在时间为基准的未来事件,“would”则用于描述以过去时间为基准的未来事件。



较早时候

现在

I think I **will** finish the gardening today. It shouldn't take too long.

I thought I **would** finish today, but there is still a lot left to do.

更多例证

I always knew she **would** be successful.



I was told that my car **would** be fixed by now.



Did you ever think you **would** become a doctor?



I don't know where Hilda is. I thought **she'd** be here by 8pm.



22.3 用过去进行时表示过去视角下的将来

过去进行时可以用来表述过去计划好的将要发生的事情。



星期一早晨



星期一下午



现在

Jenny **was** extremely **nervous** on Monday morning.
She **was taking** her driving test that afternoon.

更多例证

They **were planning** to go to the beach tomorrow, but the weather's terrible.



Michelle had been cleaning all day. Her sister **was arriving** that evening.



Hugo had to go to bed early because he **was flying** early the following morning.



23 将来时总览

23.1 将来时

一般现在时 可以用于表述计划好的或已经定好时间将要发生的事情。

The train **arrives** at 10pm.

现在进行时 可以用于表述未来的安排和计划。

I'm traveling to Paris by train later this evening.



一般将来时 是表述未来的事情最常用的时态。

It { **will**
is going to } rain tomorrow.

将来进行时 用于表述未来特定时间正在发生的事情。事情在特定时间之前已经开始且之后可能会继续进行。

It { **will**
is going to } **be** raining all weekend.



23.2 “GOING TO” 和 “WILL”

在英语中，“going to” 和 “will” 都可以表示将来，有时两者意义相近，但一些情况下两者表示的意义并不相同。

“will” 用于预测，前提是作出的预测没有现实依据。

这个预测没有确凿依据。

I think Number 2 **will** win.



“going to” 用于预测，前提是作出的预测有现实依据。

Look, Number 2 is **going to** win.



英语中有各种表示将来的句子结构，多数都由助动词“will”或“be”的某种形式加“going to”辅助构成。

参见：
“going to”引导的将来时 17
“will”引导的将来时 18

将来完成时 用于推测动作或事情结束的时间。该时态是在某个设想的未来时间对动作或事情进行回顾。

They **will have** built the skyscraper by next year.

将来完成进行时 用于推测某件事或某个动作最终的持续时间。该时态是在事情结束的时间点对整件事情进行回顾。

By July, they **will have been working** on it for a year.



过去将来时 用于表述某人在过去某时对当时视角下的未来进行的思考。有三种组成结构。

The traffic **was** terrible, so I knew I **was going to** be late.

“am going to” 变为 “was going to”。

“will” 变为 “would”。

I thought I **would** finish the gardening by the end of the day.

I was nervous on Sunday night. I **was starting** a new job the next day.

“am starting” 变为 “was starting”。

“will” 用于表述现场临时的决定。

I know! I'll **buy** Jo a surfboard for her birthday.

这个决定并不是提前计划好的。



“going to” 用于表述早已决定好的事情。

I'm **going to** buy her a surfboard that I saw last week.

这个决定事先已经计划好了。



24 被动语态

在大多数句子中，主语是动作的发出者，宾语是动作的承受者或动作的结果。但被动语态恰恰相反：主语是动作的承受者。

参见：
一般现在时 1 现在进行时 4
不定式和分词 51

24.1 一般现在时的被动语态

在被动语态中，句子的重点不是施动者（发出动作的人或物），而是动作本身或动作的承受者。在一般现在时的被动语态中，动词原形要变成过去分词。



更多例证

当施动者显而易见、不确定或不重要时，可以使用被动语态。在描述某个动作的过程时，如果需要强调动作结果的重要性，也可以使用被动语态。



语法剖析

所有的被动语态都由 “be” 的某种形式和过去分词构成，还可以用 “by” 引出施动者（动作发出者），但即使不出现施动者，句子意思仍然完整。



24.2 现在进行时的被动语态

现在进行时的被动语态用于描述正在进行的动作。



现在进行时

Developers **are building** lots of new houses in the area.

Lots of new houses **are being built** in the area.

现在进行时的被动语态

更多例证

You can't use the pool today because it **is being cleaned**.



I **am being interviewed** by a news channel tomorrow.



The robbery **is being investigated** by the police.



Don't worry, the food **is being cooked** as we speak.



We're living in a trailer while our house **is being rebuilt**.



Posters for the concert **are being put up** all over town.



The course **is being taught** by a well-known scientist.



I have to walk to work while my car **is being repaired**.



语法剖析

主语

"AM / IS / ARE"

"BEING"

过去分词

其他句子成分

New houses

are

being

built

in the area.

动作的承受者。

"be" 的一般现在时形式。

过去分词描述的是施加给主语的动作。

在英语中，过去时的被动语态用于强调过去某个动作产生的结果，而不是动作发生的原因。

参见：

一般过去时 7 过去进行时 10
现在完成时 11 过去完成时 13

25.1 一般过去时的被动语态

一般过去时的被动语态用于表述发生且完成在过去的单个动作，强调的是动作产生的影响，而非动作发生的原因。



一般过去时

The fire **destroyed** the buildings.

一般过去时的被动语态

The buildings **were destroyed** by the fire.

更多例证

The trees **were cut down** last year.



The rail road **was damaged** during the storm.



Two people **were injured** in the accident.



语法剖析

主语

"WAS / WERE"

过去分词

其他句子成分

The buildings

were

destroyed

in a fire.

动作的承受者。

主语是单数用 "was"，
主语是复数用 "were"。

主要动词用过去分词。

25.2 过去进行时的被动语态

过去进行时也可以用在被动语态中，用于描述过去正在进行的动作。

过去进行时



Secret agents **were watching** him.

过去进行时的被动语态

He **was being watched** by secret agents.

更多例证

The students **were being taught** how to write good essays.



By the time I got back to my car, it **was being taken away**.



I went for lunch while my car **was being fixed**.



The new secretary **was being shown** how to use the computer.



We bought our house while it **was being built**.



语法剖析



25.3 现在完成时的被动语态

现在完成时的被动语态用于描述过去发生的、对现在仍有影响的事情。



现在完成时

Don't worry, I **have fed** the cats.

现在完成时的被动语态

Don't worry, the cats **have been fed**.

更多例证

This door **has been painted** beautifully.



Do you know if all the lights **have been turned off**?



Has your computer **been fixed** yet? It broke months ago!



主语和动词调换位置，构成疑问句。

The new parts **haven't been delivered** yet, so you'll have to wait.



All of the smoke detectors **have been replaced**.



语法剖析

主语

"HAS / HAVE"

"BEEN"

过去分词

The cats

have

been

fed.

动作的承受者。

不管主语是什么，都用“been”。

主要动词用过去分词。

25.4 过去完成时的被动语态

过去完成时的被动语态用于描述在过去某个事件之前完成的事情。



Unfortunately, the organizer **had canceled** the party.

过去完成时

过去完成时的被动语态

Unfortunately, the party **had been canceled**.

更多例证

This part of the Arctic **had never been explored** before.



The class **hadn't been told** that the lecture **had been canceled**.



Sue didn't realize that the floor **had just been polished**.



We were about to sing *Happy Birthday*, but the cake **had been eaten**!



Anna was so happy that her cat **had been found**.



语法剖析



26 将来时被动语态

在英语中，使用将来时的被动语态可以强调未来某动作的结果，而不是该动作发生的原因。

参见：

“will” 引导的将来时 18

将来完成时 21 不定式和分词 51

26.1 一般将来时的被动语态

一般将来时的被动语态常常使用 “will” 而非 “going to”。



一般将来时

Hopefully, the police **will catch** the thief very soon.

一般将来时的被动语态

Hopefully, the thief **will be caught** very soon.

谁抓到了小偷并不重要，或者说话者并不知道是谁抓到了小偷。

更多例证

Don't worry, the house **will be finished** very soon.



An email **will be sent** to you all next week with more details.



Sorry, but the power **will be turned off** between 2pm and 5pm.



语法剖析

主语

“WILL BE”

过去分词

其他句子成分

The thief

will be

caught

very soon.

动作的承受者。

不管主语是什么，都用 “will be”。

主要动词用过去分词。

26.2 将来完成时的被动语态

将来完成时的被动语态用于描述在未来某时间将要完成的事情。



将来完成时

The mechanic **will have fixed** the car by 5pm.

将来完成时的被动语态

The car **will have been fixed** by 5pm.

更多例证

We think every ticket **will have been bought** before the end of the day.



Hurry up or all the good seats **will have been taken** already.



You should call early, otherwise all the tables **will have been booked**.



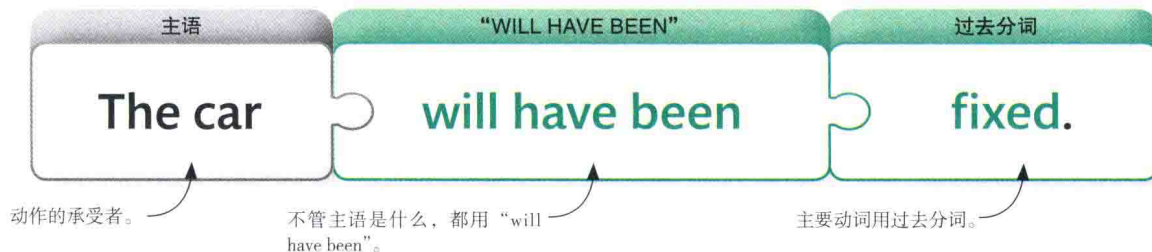
Come back tomorrow. The park **will have been cleaned** by then.



Will those letters **have been sent** out before lunchtime tomorrow?



语法剖析



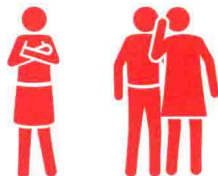
英语的情态动词可以用在被动语态中。与其他形式的被动语态一样，句子强调的对象是动作的承受者。

参见：

现在完成时 11 被动语态 24
情态动词 56

27.1 现在时被动语态中的情态动词

被动语态句子中的情态动词形式不变，句子用情态动词开头，后接“be”动词加过去分词。



含有情态动词的现在时

You **should tell** Barbara the exciting news!

含有情态动词的现在时被动语态

Barbara **should be told** the exciting news!

更多例证



Should the package **be delivered** to your house or your office?



The treasure chest **can** only **be opened** with a special key.



All new employees **must be shown** what to do if there's a fire.

语法剖析

主语

情态动词

“BE”

过去分词

其他句子成分

Barbara

should

be

told

the news.

动作的承受者。

可以用其他的情态动词。

不管主语是什么，都用“be”。

主要动词用过去分词。

27.2 完成时被动语态中的情态动词

完成时中的情态动词变被动时，需将“have”换成“have been”。



含有情态动词的完成时

The managers **should have given** Daniel more time.

含有情态动词的完成时被动语态

Daniel **should have been given** more time.

更多例证

We **should have been told** that the concert was canceled!



The robber **would have been arrested** if he hadn't been so quick.



The leaking pipe **might have been fixed** now. Should we ask?



Lots of people think that the fire **could have been prevented**.



语法剖析

主语

情态动词

“HAVE BEEN”

过去分词

其他句子成分

He

should

have been

given

more time.

动作的承受者。

可以用其他的情态动词。

不管主语是什么，
都用“have been”。

主要动词用过去分词。

28 其他被动语态结构

英语中的很多习语都使用被动语态。其中一些符合标准的被动语态规则，另外一些稍有不同。

参见：
转述动词 45 被动语态 24
限定性关系从句 81

28.1 含有被动结构的转述

一些被动结构用于拉大作者或说话者与事实之间的距离，使句子显得更客观。这些结构常用于学术写作和新闻报道。



“IT” + 转述动词的被动语态

“THAT” 从句

It has been reported that three sailors have disappeared.

主语 + 转述动词的被动语态

不定式从句

The race is known to be extremely dangerous.

“THERE” + 转述动词的被动语态

“TO BE / TO HAVE BEEN”

There are said to be at least 20 boats in the search party.

更多例证

It has been rumored that wolves live in these woods.



The worksite is said to be unsafe for workers.



There is thought to be a problem with crime here.



It has been revealed that some prisoners have escaped.



The new school is thought to have the best teachers in the country.



There are said to be pros and cons to moving abroad.



28.2 在被动结构中使用“GET”

有时，可以用“get”替代被动句中的“be”。但这种情况不如使用“be”的句子正式。

一般现在时的被动语态

Bikes **get stolen** in this town every day.

My friend's bike **got stolen** yesterday.

一般过去时的被动语态



更多例证

The windows **get washed** once a month.



This package **got delivered** today. I wonder what it is.



My laptop **gets updated** every week by the IT team.



I hope the air conditioning **will get fixed** soon.



More and more items are **getting recycled** these days.



Did you know that the company **was getting sold**?



语法剖析

主语

His bike

“GET / GOT”

got

过去分词

stolen

其他句子成分

yesterday.

动作的承受者。

使用“get”的某种形式替代“be”。

过去分词描述的是施加给主语的动作。

29 条件句

条件句用于描述真实情景或虚拟情景产生的真实结果或虚拟结果。句中可使用多种动词形式。

参见：

一般现在时 1 祈使句 6

一般过去时 7 “will” 引导的将来时 18

29.1 零条件句

零条件句又称真实条件句，表示具有普遍真实性的事情，用于表述某个动作产生的直接结果。

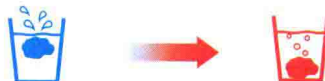


更多例证

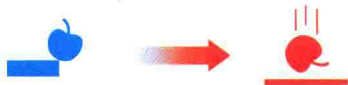
If you heat ice, it melts.



When you put a rock in water, it sinks.

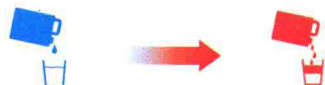


If you drop an apple, it falls.



结果可以放在句首，此时句中不用加逗号。

Oil floats when you pour it onto water.



语法剖析

“IF / WHEN”

动作（一般现在时）

逗号

结果（一般现在时）

If

When

you heat water

,

it boils.

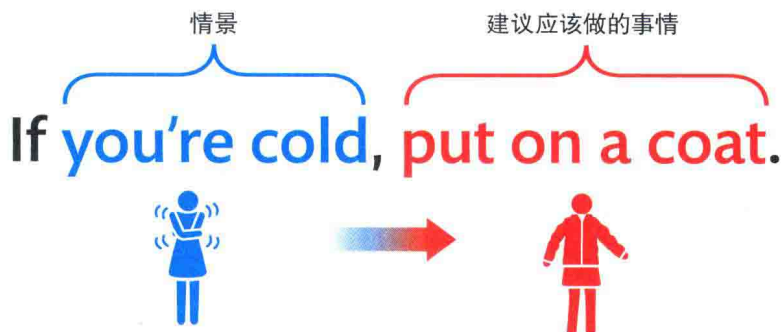
用一般现在时描述动作。

“if”或“when”引导的从句后面要加逗号。

用一般现在时表述结果。

29.2 含有祈使句的条件句

祈使句可以用在条件句中。此时，“if”条件句描述的是某个假设的情景，祈使句描述的是如果假设成立，某人应该做的事情。



更多例证

If **you feel sick**, **call a doctor.**



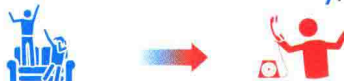
If **the dog's hungry**, **feed him.**



If **the traffic is bad**, **cycle to work.**



If **the children behave badly**, **call me.**



否定。

Don't stay up late if **you're tired.**



句子顺序作了调整，故省略逗号。

Let me know if **you need help.**



语法剖析

“If”

一般现在时

逗号

祈使句

If

you're cold

,

put on a coat.

“if”表明该句为条件句。

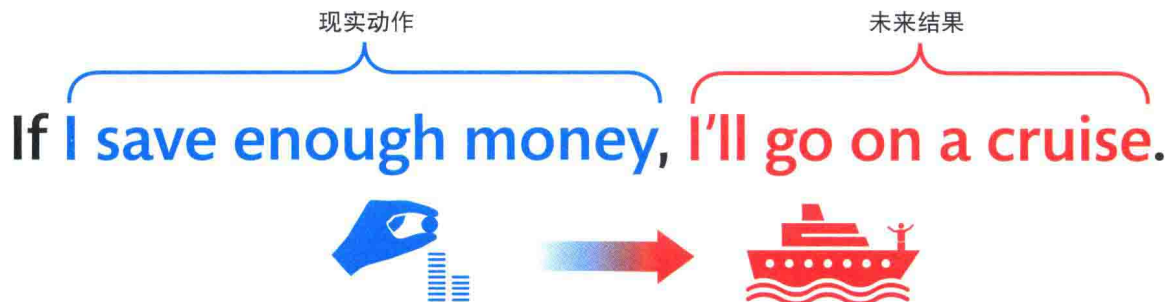
用一般现在时描述情景。

“if”从句后面要加逗号。

用祈使句提出建议。

29.3 第一条条件句

第一条条件句又称“将来真实条件句”。该条件句使用“if”描述某种可能会在未来产生结果的现实动作。



语法剖析

第一条条件句一般由“if”从句引导，后接一般现在时。条件句的结果由“will”引导的将来时句子进行表述。

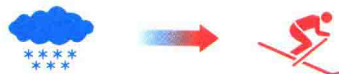


更多例证

If I go jogging, I'll lose weight.



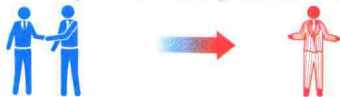
If it snows, I'll go skiing.



If we go to Africa, we'll go on safari.



If I get the job, I'll buy a new suit.



If I cook, will you do the dishes?



I won't go outside if it rains.



29.4 第二条件句

第二条件句又称“虚拟条件句”。该条件句使用“if”描述某种不太可能发生的事件或虚拟的动作。句子所描述的结果基本也是不太可能产生的。

不太可能发生的事件

不太可能产生的结果

If I won the lottery, I would leave my job.



语法剖析

第二条件句一般由“if”引导的一般过去时从句构成。其中条件句的结果用“would”或“could”+ 主要动词的原形进行表述。

“IF”

一般过去时

逗号

“WOULD / COULD”+ 动词原形

If

I won the lottery

,

I would leave my job.

“if”表明该句为条件句。

用一般过去时描述动作。

“if”从句后面要加逗号。

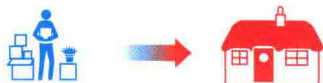
用“would”+ 动词表述结果。

更多例证

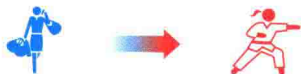
If he wasn't so busy, he'd take a break.



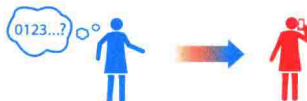
If I moved to Scotland, I'd live in a cottage.



If I had more time, I could take up karate.



I'd call her if I knew her number.



If I saw a ghost, I would be terrified.



If I learned English, I could visit London.



29.5 第三条件句

第三条件句又称“过去情况的虚拟条件句”，用于描述与事实相反的过去情况。该条件句一般用于表达遗憾：由于过去发生了一件事情，句中假想的结果变得不可能产生了。



对过去情况的虚拟

对过去结果的虚拟

If **we had left earlier**, **we would have caught the train**.

这件事情没有发生。

因此这个结果也没有产生。

更多例证



If I had woken up on time,
I would have done my hair.



If you had been wearing a coat,
you might have stayed warm.

“might”说明这件事本来有可能发生。



If I had studied harder,
I could have been a doctor.

“could”表明这件事本来能够发生。



If I had known it was your birthday,
I would have bought you a present.

语法剖析

“IF”

“HAD” + 过去分词

If we had left earlier

“WOULD / COULD / MIGHT”

we would

“HAVE” + 过去分词

have caught the train.

该“if”从句是对过去情况的虚拟。

对虚拟的结果来讲，不同的情态动词指示不同的确定性。

虚拟的结果。

29.6 混合条件句

第二条件句

第二条件句用于表述现在的虚拟情况。

一般过去时



If I didn't believe in astrology,
I wouldn't read my horoscope.

“WOULD” + 不带“TO”的不定式

第三条件句

第三条件句用于表述过去的虚拟情况。

过去完成时



If I had known he was an Aquarius,
I would not have gone out with him.

“WOULD” + “HAVE” + 过去分词

混合条件句

混合条件句一般用于表述与事实相反的情况在现在产生的虚拟结果。



If you had been born a month earlier,
you would be a Virgo like me.

虚拟的过去情况。

现在的虚拟结果。

更多例证

If you hadn't forgotten to bring the keys,
we wouldn't be locked out of the house.



句中有指示将来的时间词，故混合条件句表述的是将来的情况。

You would be starting at a new school
tomorrow if you hadn't failed your exams.



混合条件句常
用于表达遗憾。

If I had finished my assignment sooner,
I could be out with my friends today.



We would be on a beach in Greece by
now if we hadn't missed our flight.



30 其他条件句

英语中的条件句有一些变体，这些变体使得句子能够传达更多的语意信息。

参见：

“will”引导的将来时 18
情态动词 56

30.1 含有不同情态动词的条件句

第一条条件句、第二条条件句和第三条条件句的“结果”从句可以使用不同的情态动词，用以表达不确定性、可能性、某种义务等。



第一条条件句

可以用其他情态动词替代第一条条件句中的“will”，不同的情态动词表示不同的意思。

If I save enough money, I **will** buy a new car.

If I save enough money, I **can** buy a new car.

这里可以使用不同的情态动词。

第二条条件句

第二条条件句中的“would”可以换成“could”或“might”，用以表达能力、可能性或不确定性。

If I **saved** enough money, I **would** buy a new car.

If I **saved** enough money, I **could** / **might** buy a new car.

第三条条件句

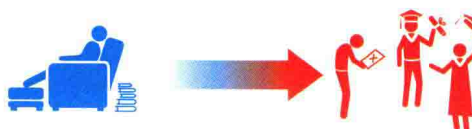
第三条条件句中的“would”可以换成“could”或“might”，用以表达能力、可能性或不确定性。

If I **had saved** enough money, I **would have bought** a new car.

If I **had saved** enough money, I **could** / **might have bought** a new car.

30.2 含有“UNLESS”的第一条件句

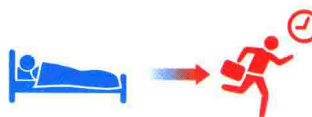
“unless”可以替代条件句中的“if”。“unless”的意思是“if...not”，所以未来的结果在假设动作没有发生的情况下才会产生。



If you don't
Unless you } study hard, you will fail your exams.

更多例证

If you don't
Unless you } get up now, you'll be late for work.



I'll be angry { if he doesn't turn
unless he turns } that music down.



30.3 正式的第三条件句

将句中的“if”省略，然后把“had”和主语对调，这样的第三条件句会显得更加正式。



If you had attended the meeting, you would have met the manager.



Had you attended the meeting, you would have met the manager.

更多例证

Had I worked harder at school,
I could have studied medicine.

Had she woken up earlier,
she wouldn't have been late.

Had you listened to the directions,
we would have arrived on time.

Had we bought that house,
we couldn't have afforded this trip.

31 条件句总览

31.1 条件句的类型

零条件句 用于表述一定会发生的客观真实情况，以及表述一般性事实。

一般现在时
If you play the violin out of tune, it sounds terrible.
一般现在时



第二条件句 用于描述不太可能发生的虚拟情况，但句中的情况也有发生的可能。

一般过去时
If I practiced more, that song would sound better.
“WOULD” + 动词原形



31.2 条件句中使用的逗号

若先提及动作后提及结果，则使用逗号将条件句的两个从句隔开；若先提及结果后提及动作，则无须加逗号。

先描述动作，句中要使用逗号。
When you freeze water, ice forms.

句子开头先讲结果。
Ice forms when you freeze water.

在动作和结果中间加“if”或“when”，无须加逗号。

条件句共有四种类型。其中，零条件句用于表述真实的情况，第一条件句、第二条件句和第三条件句表述的是虚拟情况。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7
过去完成时 13 情态动词 56

第一条件句

用于表述很有可能发生的虚拟情况。

一般现在时

If I practice really hard, this song will sound great.

“WILL” + 动词原形



第三条件句

用于表述完全不可能发生的虚拟情况。由于前提条件是假想的，所以结果也是不可能发生的。

过去完成时

If I had practiced more, I would have sounded better.

“WOULD” + “HAVE” + 过去分词



⚠ 常见错误 在条件句中使用其他时态

条件句中的“if”从句中不能使用“will”“would”和“would have”。

If I will work really hard, this piece will sound great. ❌

该“if”从句中不能用“will”。

If I would practice more, that piece would sound better. ❌

该“if”从句中不能用“would”。

If I would have practiced more, I would have sounded better. ❌

该“if”从句中不能用“would have”。

32 未来可能性

在英语中，用来表示未来可能性的方式有很多。
可能性不同，使用的语法结构也不同。

参见：

一般现在时 1

一般过去时 7 过去完成时 13

32.1 可能发生的事情

“what if”或“suppose”后接现在时，可以用来表述未来可能发生的事情。

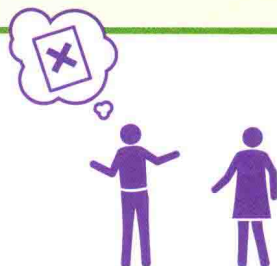
“what if”意为“what would happen if an imagined situation occurred?”
(如果设想的情况真的发生了，会产生什么样的结果?)

What if
Suppose

I **fail** my exams? I won't be able to go to college.

用一般现在时，说明说话者认为这种情况是很可能发生的。

“suppose”表述假设的情况。



更多例证

What if the computer **crashes**?
I will lose all my work.

Suppose they **assess** our coursework.
We will have to keep a portfolio.

32.2 不太可能发生的事情

“what if”或“suppose”后接一般过去时，可以用来表述未来有可能发生但可能性很小的情况。

Just imagine! **What if**
Suppose we all **got** 100% on our exams?

用过去时，表明说话者认为这种情况发生的可能性很小。



更多例证

Suppose I **got caught** cheating.
My parents would be furious.

What if our flight **was canceled**?
We'd be stuck here!

32.3 原本可能发生的事情

“what if” 和 “suppose” 后面还可以接过去完成时，用于描述过去原本可能发生但实际上没有发生的事情，或可能没有发生过的事情。



That was so dangerous! { What if
Suppose } you **had broken** your leg?

用过去完成时，表明这件事没有发生，但是当时确实有可能发生。

更多例证

We were lucky to catch that plane!
What if it hadn't been delayed?

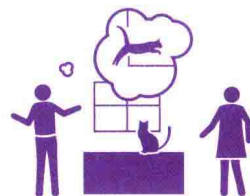
Suppose you had taken the job.
We would have had to move.

32.4 IN CASE

“in case” 或 “just in case” 后接现在时，用来表述对未来可能发生的情况的应对措施。

Make sure the windows are shut
in case the cat **tries** to escape.

现在时。



更多例证

You should take an umbrella with you **in case** it **rains** later.

We should start organizing our project work, **just in case** they **want** to see it.

You should write these instructions down **in case** you **forget** what to do.

You should leave for the airport early, **just in case** the traffic **is** bad.

“in case” 前加 “just” 用于表述对可能性较小的未来情况作出的应对措施。

用“wish”表示遗憾

英语中的“wish”可用来表示对现在或过去情况的遗憾。
“wish”后动词的时态不同，句子的意思也不相同。

参见：

一般过去时 7 过去完成时 13
情态动词 56

33.1 “WISH” + 一般过去时

“wish” + 一般过去时，用来表述对现在情况的遗憾或愿望，这种愿望还有实现的可能。

I **wish** I **earned** more money.

此处使用一般过去时，但表述的是现在的情况。



更多例证

Mike's apartment is too small. He **wishes** he **lived** in a bigger house.



They **wish** the weather **was** better so they could go to the beach.



You're always busy, I **wish** you **didn't have to** work so hard.



Sandra hates her job. She **wishes** she **worked** on a farm.



语法剖析

主语

“WISH”

主语

一般过去时

其他句子成分

I

wish

I

earned

more money.

根据主语来确定使用“wish”或“wishes”。

一般过去时表述的是对现在情况的遗憾或愿望。

33.2 “WISH” + 过去完成时

“wish” + 过去完成时用于表述对过去情况的遗憾。这种愿望已经没有实现的可能了。



I've failed my exams. I **wish** I **had studied** harder.

过去完成时用于表述对过去的某种遗憾。

更多例证

He's very tired. He **wishes** he **had gone** to bed early last night.



My car's useless! I **wish** I **hadn't bought** such an old one.



Jo is really bored. She **wishes** she **had gone out** with her friends.



We're totally lost! I **wish** we **had brought** a map.



I **wish** I **had known** how big this dress was before I bought it.



There was a meteor shower last night. I **wish** I **had seen** it.



语法剖析

主语

I

“WISH”

wish

主语

I

过去完成时

had studied

其他句子成分

harder.

根据主语来确定使用
“wish” 或 “wishes”。

过去完成时表述的是对
过去情况的遗憾。

33.3 “WISH” 用于表述未来的希望

“wish” 还可用来表述未来的希望。“wish” 常与 “could” 连用，用于表述某人自己想做某事。

I **wish** I **could** move somewhere warm.

[我想要搬去暖和一点儿的地方住。]



“wish” 与 “would” 连用，用于表述某人想要别人做某事。

She **wishes** her teacher **would** give her less work.

[她希望老师以后少布置一些作业。]



更多例证

I **wish** I **could** get a new job in a different department.



Colin is always talking about cars. I **wish** he **would** stop.



I **wish** I **could** go to the concert with my friends this evening.



I **wish** they **wouldn't** make it so hard to buy tickets online.



Irene **wishes** she **could** find her diamond necklace.



Jenny's mother **wishes** she **would** clean her room.



Matteo **wishes** he **could** play the violin.



Noel **wishes** Adrienne **would** stop singing.



He **wishes** he **could** understand his homework.



Madge **wishes** Greg **wouldn't** drive so fast.



33.4 另外一种表达 “I WISH” 的方式

对现在的遗憾

可以使用 “if only” + 一般过去时表述更加强烈的对现在情况的遗憾。



These mountains are incredible!
If only I knew how to ski.

对过去的遗憾

可以使用 “if only” + 过去完成时表述更加强烈的对过去情况的遗憾。



I really wanted to take pictures.
If only I'd charged the battery.

更多例证

I love the sound of the guitar.
If only I played it better.

I'm sure the teacher explained this. **If only I remembered** it!

The show is completely sold out!
If only I'd arrived sooner.

I couldn't finish the marathon.
If only I had trained harder.

33.5 对过去的遗憾

“should have” 或 “ought to have” 用于表述对过去发生的或过去没有发生的事情的遗憾。

This bill is so big. I { **should have**
ought to have } used less electricity.

过去分词。



更多例证

Maybe I **should have** used energy-saving light bulbs.



“ought not to have” 这种否定形式偶尔会出现在英式英语中，但美式英语从来不会这样用。

I **shouldn't have** fallen asleep with the TV on.



34 疑问句的构成

如果陈述句中使用了“be”或某个助动词，变疑问句时要调换主语和该动词的位置。其他句子变疑问句则是在句首添加“do”或“does”。

参见：

一般现在时 1 动词类型 49
情态动词 56

34.1 含有“BE”动词的疑问句

使用“be”动词构成疑问句时，“be”动词应置于主语之前。

在陈述句中，主语在动词之前。

You are Canadian.



Are you Canadian?

在疑问句中，动词在主语之前。

主语在动词之后。

更多例证

Sorry, am I early?



Are you tired?



Are they engineers?



Is Frieda here yet?



Is she still a student?



Aren't you bored?

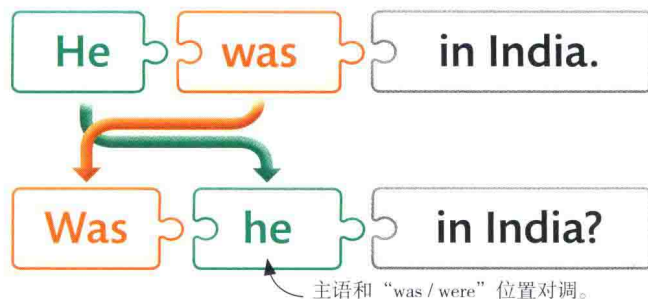


语法剖析

“BE”	主语	其他句子成分
Am	I	Canadian?
Are	you / we / they	
Is	he / she / it	

34.2 含有“BE”动词过去式的疑问句

用“be”动词对过去情况进行提问，要将主语和“be”动词位置对调。



更多例证

Was it nice and sunny yesterday?



Were there any snacks at the party?



Was he good at playing tennis?

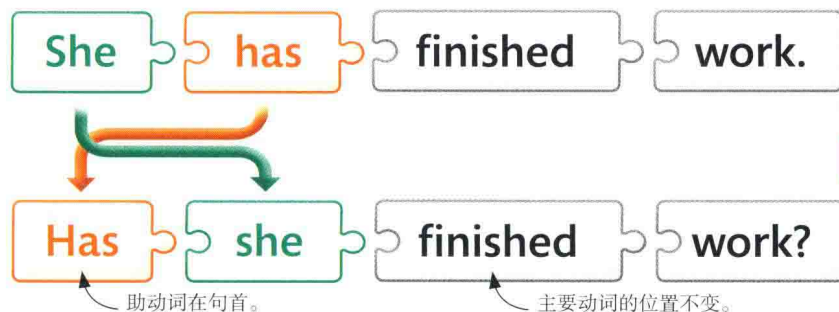


Were you at the party last night?



34.3 含有助动词的疑问句

对于含有“have”“will”和“could”等助动词的句子，变疑问句时要将主语和助动词位置对调。句中主要动词的位置不变。



更多例证

Could you tell me where the stadium is, please?



Have they decided when they're going to get married yet?



如果句中不止一个助动词，只需将第一个助动词放到句首。

Should we have called ahead before coming?



Will you have finished that report by tomorrow?



34.4 “DO” 和 “DOES” 构成的疑问句

不含“be”或助动词的一般现在时句子变疑问句时，要在句首添加“do”或“does”，同时句中的主要动词变为原形。主语和主要动词的位置无须调换。

She works in an office.



Does she work in an office?

用“do”或“does”开头。 主要动词变为原形。

更多例证

Do they live in Paris?



Does he get up very early every morning?



Do you speak English?



Does your father work on a farm?



Do I know you?



Does she still play the piano?



Don't you have any vegetarian food on the menu?



Doesn't this office have air conditioning?

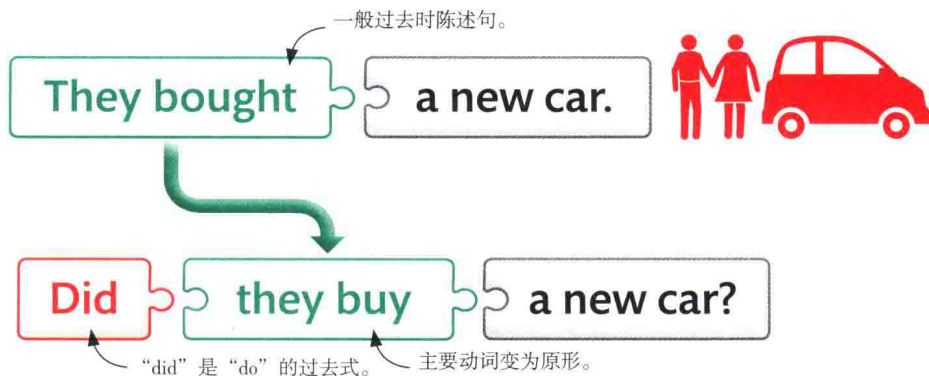


语法剖析

“DO / DOES”	主语	动词原形	其他句子成分
Do	I / you / we / they	work	in an office?
Does	he / she / it		

34.5 “DID” 构成的疑问句

不含“be”或助动词的一般过去时句子变疑问句时，要在句首添加“did”，同时句中的主要动词变为原形。主语和主要动词的位置无须调换。



更多例证

Did they have a good time?



Did she meet her friends in town?



Did you read a book on the beach?



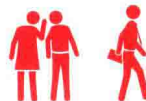
Did he go to the gym?



Did I tell you the good news?



Did Jack just get fired?



Did you swim in the sea?



Didn't we meet at the conference last year in Paris?



⚠ 常见错误 “DO” 构成的疑问句中的动词原形

当疑问句由助动词“do”辅助构成时，句中的主要动词必须变为原形。

Does she work in a school? ✓

Did they buy a new car? ✓

Does she works in a school? ✗

Did they bought a new car? ✗

35 疑问词

特殊疑问句是指不能用“yes”或“no”回答的问句。英语中的特殊疑问句由疑问词引导。

参见：
疑问句的构成 34
时间介词 107

35.1 疑问词

英语中有九个常用的疑问词。

what 用于对事物提问。

What is the time?



when 用于对时间提问。

When is dinner?



why 用于询问原因。

Why are you mad?



where 用于对地点或方向提问。

Where is the café?



who 用于对人提问。

Who is Jo's teacher?



whom 是“who”的正式语，在疑问句中只能作宾语。

Whom did you give the package to?



how 用于对某种情况或某种做事方式进行提问。

How are you?



how 可以跟形容词或副词连用，用于询问程度。

How busy is she?



which 用于要求某人在两个或多个事物中进行指认。

Which car is yours?



whose 用于询问谁是事物的所有者。

Whose cat is this?



35.2 “WHAT / WHICH”

提笼统的问题时，用 “what”；疑问句中有两个或多个选择时，用 “which”。

该疑问句中并没有供选择的选项。

What is the tallest building in the world?



该疑问句中有可供选择的选项。

Which building is taller, Big Ben **or** the Eiffel Tower?



更多例证

What is the highest mountain in the Alps?



Which mountain is higher, the Matterhorn **or** Mont Blanc?



What sort of food do you like?



Which do you prefer, the red skirt **or** the blue skirt?



35.3 “HOW OFTEN” 和 “WHEN”

“how often” 用于询问某人做某事的频率；
“when” 用于询问某人做某事的具体时间。

“how often” 用于询问频率。

How often do you go on vacation?



I usually go on vacation once a year.

“when” 用于询问某事发生的具体时间。

When do you go running?



I go on Thursday nights.

更多例证

How often do you go to the beach?



Not very often.

When do you go to the gym?



On Tuesdays and Fridays.

36 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句不能用“yes”或“no”回答。句中的主要动词不同，特殊疑问句的构成方式也不同。

参见：
一般现在时 1 疑问词 35
动词类型 49

36.1 含有“BE”动词的特殊疑问句

如果句子的主要动词是“be”，变疑问句时要将疑问词放在句首，“be”动词紧接在疑问词之后。

My name is Sarah.
What is your name?

“be”紧接在疑问词之后。

问句是“开放”的，
因为不能用“yes”
或“no”回答。



更多例证

What is Ruby's job?



How was the concert?



Where were you last night?



Why are we all here?



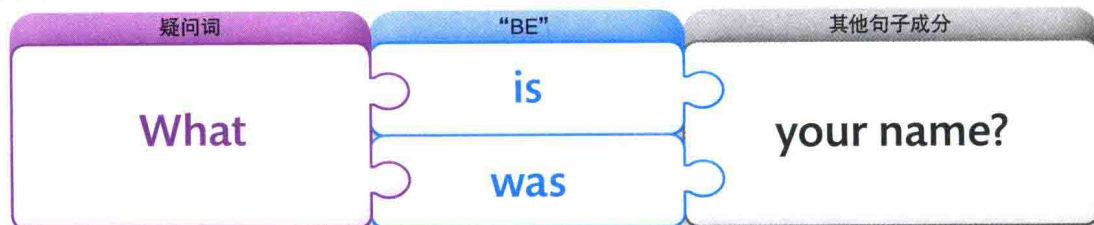
What is this thing?



Why aren't you at school?



语法剖析



36.2 含有其他动词的特殊疑问句

所有不含“be”动词的句子变疑问句时，疑问词后都要加助动词。如果原句中有助动词，可直接将其用于疑问句；如果没有，则添加“do”的某种形式。

Who **should** I call?

原句中已有助动词，故在疑问句中继续沿用。



When **do** you eat lunch?

疑问词后加助动词“do”。

疑问词放在句首。

主要动词变为原形。



语法剖析

疑问词

助动词

主语

主要动词

When

do

did

should

you

eat lunch?

更多例证

Where **do** you go swimming?



Where **could** he have gone?



What **does** she do on the weekend?



How **did** this happen?



Which car **do** you drive to work?



Who **can** speak English here?



When **does** he finish work?



What **should** I do now?



Why **did** you stay up so late?



When **did** you get a cat?



疑问句有两种类型：宾语疑问句和主语疑问句。
两者的构成方式不同，提问的对象也不同。

参见：
一般现在时 1 动词类型 49
及物动词搭配 53

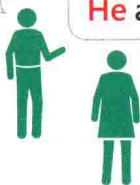
37.1 宾语疑问句

宾语疑问句用于提问动作的承受者而非动作的发出者。之所以叫宾语疑问句，是因为疑问词在句中作主要动词的宾语。



更多例证

What did he eat?



He ate steak and salad.

Who did you speak to?



I spoke to Jane.

语法剖析



这里可以使用不同的疑问词。

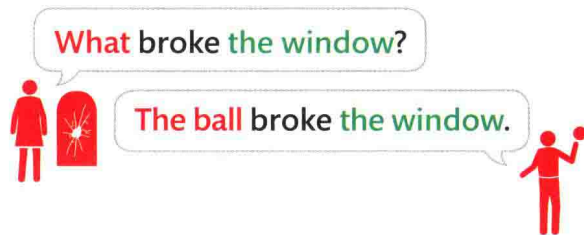
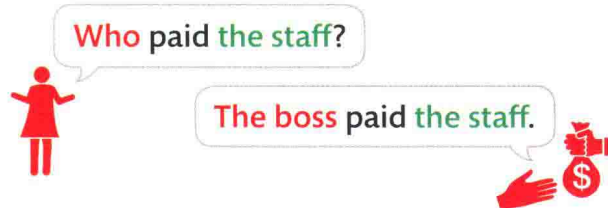
助动词表明疑问句的时态。

37.2 主语疑问句

主语疑问句用于提问动作的发出者。之所以叫主语疑问句，是因为疑问词在句中作主要动词的主语。主语疑问句无须添加助动词“do”。



更多例证



语法剖析

主语疑问句中最常见的代词是“who”和“what”。



⚠ 常见错误 宾语疑问句和主语疑问句

宾语疑问句 必须使用助动词“do”的某种形式。

“did”是该宾语疑问句中的助动词。

What did you see? ✓

What saw you? ✗

不要通过调换单词顺序来构成宾语疑问句。

主语疑问句 不使用助动词，且句中的单词顺序与正常的叙述顺序一致。

单词顺序与正常的叙述顺序一致。

Who called the bank? ✓

Who did call the bank? ✗

只有宾语疑问句中才使用助动词“do”。

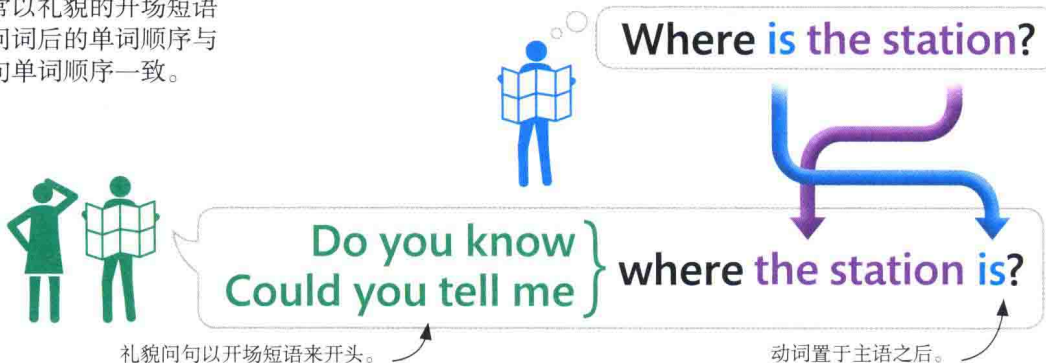
38 礼貌问句

礼貌问句比直接问句的语气更委婉。礼貌问句在正式英语口语中很常见，尤其常用于询问信息。

参见：
一般现在时 1 疑问句的构成 34
动词类型 49

38.1 礼貌的特殊疑问句

礼貌问句常以礼貌的开场短语开头。疑问词后的单词顺序与肯定陈述句单词顺序一致。



更多例证

Do you know how much **the tickets will cost**?

Could you tell me why **you were** late?

Could you tell me what time **the stores close**?

此处的礼貌问句省略了助动词“do”。

语法剖析

开场短语

疑问词

主语

动词

Do you know

where

the station

is?

Could you tell me

礼貌的开场短语放在句首。

礼貌问句中的动词不用变成过去时态。

38.2 礼貌的一般疑问句

礼貌的一般疑问句由“if”或“whether”构成。此时“if”和“whether”的意思相同。

Is it raining outside?



Could you tell me { if whether } it is raining outside?

礼貌的开场短语。

主语置于动词之前。

更多例证



Do you know if that restaurant is expensive?



Could you tell me whether the train is on time?

语法剖析

开场短语

“IF / WHETHER”

主语

动词

其他句子成分

Do you know

if

it

is

raining outside?

礼貌的开场短语放在句首。

⚠ 常见错误 礼貌问句中的单词顺序

如果疑问句有开场短语，则该礼貌问句中的单词顺序与陈述句中的单词顺序一致，无须调换单词顺序，也无须加助动词“do”。

Could you tell me where the station is? ✓

Could you tell me where is the station? ✗

Could you tell me when you close? ✓

Could you tell me when do you close? ✗

39 附加疑问句

在英语口语中，句子结尾常会添加简短的疑问句，这就是附加疑问句。附加疑问句多用于寻求对方赞同。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7
动词类型 49 情态动词 56

39.1 由“BE”构成的附加疑问句

最简单的附加疑问句由“be”加代词构成，其中代词要与句子主语指代一致。

陈述句 附加疑问句

The music is very loud, **isn't it?**



更多例证



You're cold, **aren't you?**



I'm late, **aren't I?**

主语是“I”的陈述句接否定附加疑问句时，要使用“aren't I”，不能用“amn't I”。



He was tall, **wasn't he?**



I'm not talking too much, **am I?**

提示

附加疑问句多用于非正式场合。

语法剖析

肯定陈述句后要使用否定附加疑问句，否定陈述句后要使用肯定附加疑问句。

肯定陈述

The music is very loud,

动词的肯定形式。

否定附加疑问句

isn't it?

附加疑问句使用动词的否定形式。

否定陈述

The music **isn't** very loud,

动词的否定形式。

肯定附加疑问句

is it?

附加疑问句使用动词的肯定形式。

39.2 由助动词构成的附加疑问句

在一般现在时陈述句中，若句中动词不是“be”，则绝大多数情况下都要使用“do”或“does”构成附加疑问句。



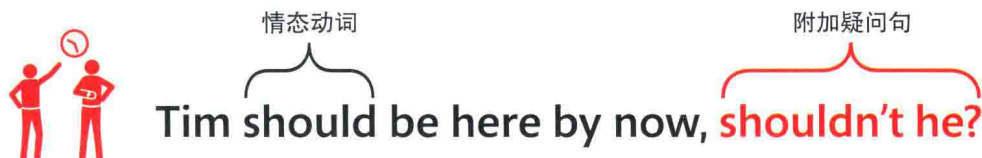
一般过去时陈述句的附加疑问句由“did”构成。



带有助动词的陈述句，其附加疑问句要使用与陈述句相同的助动词。



带有情态动词“could”“would”和“should”的陈述句，其附加疑问句要使用与陈述句相同的情态动词。



39.3 附加疑问句的语调

如果附加疑问句是升调，表明说话者想要得到回答。

—————
You'd like to move offices, wouldn't you?

如果附加疑问句是降调，表明说话者想要得到赞同。

—————
You've already met Evelyn, haven't you?

40 简短问句

在对话中，简短问句用来表示自己对对方的话题感兴趣。简短问句用于维持对话，而非询问新信息。

参见：
一般现在时 1 疑问句的构成 34
动词类型 49

40.1 简短问句

简短问句必须与其对应的陈述句保持时态一致。如果陈述句是肯定句，那么简短问句也应该是肯定句；反之亦然。简短问句的主语要使用与陈述句的主语对应的代词进行替换。

It's Tom's birthday today.



Is it?

带有“be”动词的陈述句，其对应的简短问句也要使用相同形式的“be”动词。

I play golf every weekend.



Do you?

带有其他动词的陈述句，其对应的简短问句要使用助动词“do”的某种形式。

更多例证

I am going to visit my parents next week.



Are you?

因为简短问句指向的是说话者，所以“I am”要变为“are you”。

I went to a party last night.



Did you?

用“do”的过去式“did”对应“go”的过去式“went”。

Rob wasn't in the office this morning.



Wasn't he?

对应的陈述句是否定句，所以简短问句也应该是否定形式。

My son studies every night.



Does he?

第三人称单数“does”对应“studies”。

40.2 含有助动词的简短问句

如果陈述句中含有助动词（包括情态动词），简短问句应重复使用该助动词。

I have just come back from Hawaii.



Have you?

这里的“have”是助动词，用于构成现在完成时。

更多例证

I couldn't wait to come to work today.



Couldn't you?



I've been working since 7am.



Have you?



The train should be here by now.



Should it?

I can't find my car keys.



Can't you?



40.3 美式英语中的简短问句

在美式英语中，有时简短问句不用调换词序。

Roger is starting a new job tomorrow.



He is?

主语和动词的位置没有调换，但应使用升调。

My team didn't win the game last night.



They didn't?

回答英语的一般疑问句时，为了使回应更加简明，可以省略一些单词。简短回答常用于口语。

参见：

一般现在时 1 动词类型 49
情态动词 56 “there” 85

41.1 简短回答

当问句中有“be”时，其对应的简短回答中也要用“be”，且时态应与问句保持一致。
当问句中有助动词“do”时，其对应的简短回答中也应使用助动词“do”，且时态应与问句保持一致。

使用“be”的疑问句。

Are you a doctor?

Yes, **I am**.

No, **I'm not**.

回答时，不必重复“a doctor”。



使用“do”的疑问句。

Do you like coffee?

Yes, **I do**.

No, **I don't**.

回答时，不必重复“like coffee”。



更多例证

Is your name Sophie? Yes, **it is**.

Are you having fun? Yes, **I am**.

Was the train on time? No, **it wasn't**.





Does he live here? Yes, **he does**.

Do you like cake? Yes, **I do**.

Did you enjoy the play? No, **I didn't**.





41.2 含有助动词的简短回答

如果问句中含有助动词（包括情态动词），简短回答应重复使用该助动词。

Can you ride a bicycle?



Yes, I can.



No, I can't.



更多例证



Would you like to play chess?

Yes, I would.



Should I sell my house?

Yes, you should.



Have they bought a new car?

No, they haven't.



Will he be at the party later?

No, he won't.



! 常见错误 含有助动词的简短回答

如果问句中含有助动词（包括情态动词），简短回答必须重复使用相同的助动词而不能使用主要动词。

Can you ride a bicycle?



Yes, I can.



Yes, I ride.



41.3 含有“THERE”的简短回答

如果问句中用了“there”，回答时也要用“there”。

Is there a hotel in the town?



Yes, there is.



No, there isn't.



是“No, there isn't a hotel in the town.”的简略形式。

Are there hotels in the town?



Yes, there are.



No, there aren't.



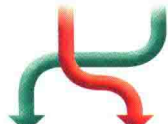
42 疑问句总览

42.1 疑问句的构成

英语的疑问句既可以通过调换主语和动词位置构成，也可以通过添加助动词“do”构成。



Tania is a pharmacist.



Is Tania a pharmacist?

主语和“be”调换位置。

42.2 主语疑问句和宾语疑问句

根据提问对象是动作的发出者还是动作的承受者，疑问句的构成方式有所不同。

陈述句

主语。

宾语。

Ben called the bank.



主语疑问句 对动作的发出者提问；疑问词在疑问句中作主要动词的主语；不使用助动词“do”。

主语疑问句

疑问句中不使用“do”。

Who called the bank?



Ben.



宾语疑问句 对动作的承受者提问；疑问词在疑问句中作宾语；一般需要使用助动词“do”。

宾语疑问句

疑问句中要使用“do”。

Who did Ben call?



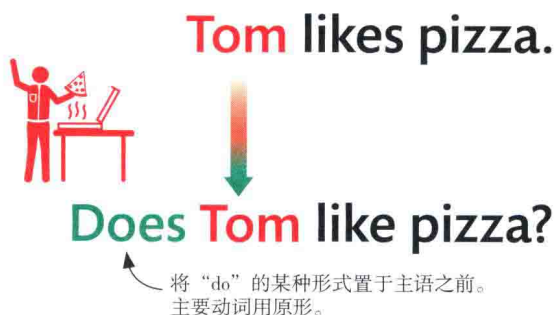
The bank.



英语疑问句有多种构成方式，句中的主要动词不同，构成疑问句的方式也不同。特殊疑问句和一般疑问句的构成方式不同，口语中的语调也有不同。

参见：

疑问句的构成 34 疑问词 35
附加疑问句 39 简短问句 40



42.3 附加疑问句和简短问句

附加疑问句 疑问部分在句子结尾，常常用于寻求某人的赞同。肯定陈述句接否定附加疑问句，否定陈述句接肯定附加疑问句。

简短问句 用来表现某人正在倾听说话者的讲话。肯定陈述句用肯定简短问句，否定陈述句用否定简短问句。

You like skiing, **don't you?**



Yes, I go skiing twice a year.



Do you?

42.4 一般疑问句和特殊疑问句

一般疑问句 只能用“yes”或“no”回答。在口语中，疑问句最后常用升调。

Does Stevie work in an office?

特殊疑问句 通过在句首添加疑问词构成，回答方式多种多样。在口语中，疑问句最后常用降调。

Where does Stevie work?



43 间接引语

直接引用别人原话时，被引用的句子叫作直接引语。
间接引语用来转述某人在之前说过的话。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7
动词类型 49

43.1 间接引语

间接引语的主要动词常用“said”。
一般情况下，间接引语的动词时态与直接引语的动词时态不相同。



I feel sick.

直接引语使用一般现在时。

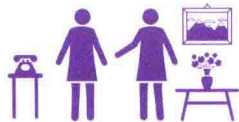
Luke said that he felt sick. I hope he's OK.

间接引语中的“said”后常加“that”。

间接引语中对应的动词使用一般过去时。



更多例证



Your house is really beautiful.

She said our house was really beautiful.

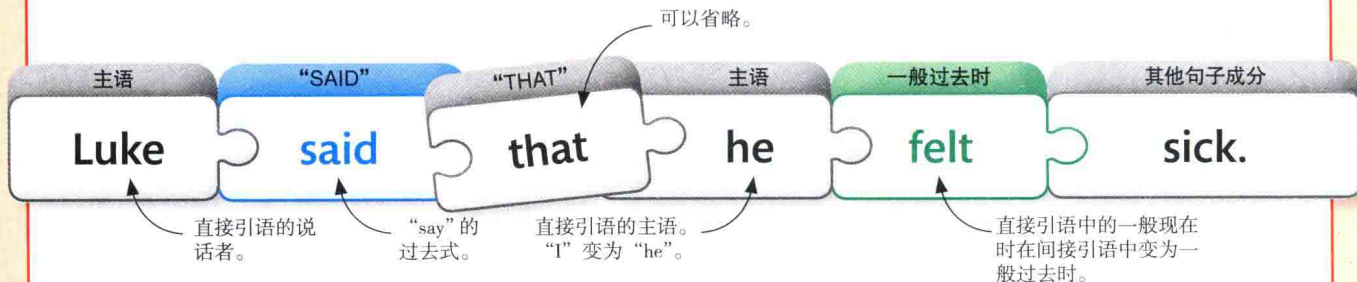


Your suit looks great.

He said that my suit looked great.



语法剖析



43.2 含有“TELL”的间接引语

间接引语的主要动词还可以用“tell”，“tell”后必须接宾语，用于指明倾听者。

I **want** to learn to drive.



“say”后面无须接宾语。

He { **said**
told me } that he **wanted** to learn to drive.



“tell”后面必须接宾语。

更多例证



She **told me** that she **was** at the party.



She **told me** that she **had** a very stressful job.



He **told us** he **arrived** late to the meeting.



They **told us** they **bought** a new house.



I **told her** that I **went** abroad last year.

在含有“told”的间接引语中，可以省略“that”。



We **told them** that we **didn't** want it.

⚠ 常见错误 间接引语中的“SAY”和“TELL”

He **said** that he had a fast car. ✓

He **said me** that he had a fast car. ✗

“said”后面不可以接宾语。

“told”后面必须接宾语。
He **told me** that he had a fast car. ✓

He **told** that he had a fast car. ✗

44 间接引语的时态

在间接引语中，被转述的动词通常“后退”一个时态。
转述的时间、地点以及代词有时也要改变。

参见：

现在进行时 4 过去进行时 10
过去完成时 13 情态动词 56

44.1 间接引语的时态变化

间接引语通常比直接引语“后退”一个时态。

I'm working in New York.



She said she was working in New York.

现在进行时



过去进行时

I've been to China twice.



He said that he'd been to China twice.

现在完成时



过去完成时

I will call you soon.



He said he would call them soon.

“WILL” 引导的将来时



情态动词 “WOULD”

We can speak Japanese.



They said that they could speak Japanese.

情态动词 “CAN”



情态动词 “COULD”

44.2 间接引语中的一般过去时

在变间接引语时，直接引语中的一般过去时既可以保留，也可以变为过去完成时，两者表示的意思一样。

I arrived in Delhi on Saturday.

一般过去时直接引语

He said { he arrived
he'd arrived } in Delhi on Saturday.

一般过去时或过去完成时间接引语

44.3 不用变换时态的间接引语

如果描述的情况依然在持续，则间接引语中的动词无须改变时态。



I like eating cake.

Amelia said that she likes eating cake.

Amelia 现在依然喜欢吃蛋糕。



更多例证



Your hat looks great.

He said that my hat looks great.



I love your tie.

He said that he loves my tie.













44.4 转述的时间和地点

如果间接引语转述的是之前发生的事情，其中的时间和地点可能需要作变动。



更多例证

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
|  <p>I'll call you tomorrow.</p> | ➡ |  <p>He said he'd call me the following day.</p> |
|  <p>The weather is nice here.</p> | ➡ |  <p>She told me the weather was nice there.</p> |
|  <p>We'll have a party this weekend.</p> | ➡ |  <p>They said they'd have a party that weekend.</p> |
|  <p>I saw you last week.</p> | ➡ |  <p>She said she'd seen me the week before.</p> |
|  <p>I'm starting a new job today.</p> | ➡ |  <p>You told her you were starting a new job that day.</p> |

44.5 间接引语中的其他变化

为了确保间接引语中的代词指代正确的人或事，代词可能也需要变化。



I don't believe **these** ghost stories.

He said that he didn't believe **those** ghost stories.

“these” 变为指代距离更远的 “those”。



This house gives me the creeps.

He said that **that** house gave him the creeps.

“this” 变为指代距离更远的 “that”。



更多例证



I don't like **my** new haircut.

He said that he didn't like **his** new haircut.



I can't wait to move into **our** new house.

He said that he couldn't wait to move into **their** new house.



Are you going to come with **us**?

He asked if I was going to go with **them**.



These are the best pastries I've ever tasted.

She said **they** were the best pastries she'd ever tasted.



45 转述动词

间接引语中的“said”可由许多其他动词替代，用以更详尽地描述某人如何叙述某事。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7
动词类型 49

45.1 后接“THAT”的转述动词

“say”和“tell”本身不反映说话者的态度。可以使用其他动词对其进行替换，用以体现说话者的情绪或说话的原因。



I'm not very good at golf.

Neil **admitted** **that** he wasn't very good at golf.

表现说话者“不情愿”。



更多例证



Don't be afraid of the dog. He's just excited to see you.

They **explained** **that** the dog was barking because he was excited to see me.



Your house is beautiful. It has a nice lawn, too.

Rohit admired our house, and **added** **that** it had a nice lawn.



语法剖析

主语

转述动词 (过去时)

“THAT”

过去时

Neil

admitted

that

he wasn't very good at golf.

转述动词引导间接引语，包含了更多信息。

动词后接“that”。

间接引语句子的时态按照规定进行变化。

45.2 后接宾语和不定式的转述动词

有些转述动词后面要接宾语和不定式。在英语中，这些动词常用于表达命令、建议和指示。



Remember to buy some milk tonight.

Ellie reminded me to buy some milk tonight.

转述动词。

宾语。

不定式。



更多例证



You've been very naughty! Go to your room.

I just ordered Aaron to go to his room.



Could you please give me a ride to the station?

Sorry I'm late. Lucia asked me to give her a ride to the station.



Come to the party! You'll have a great time!

We encouraged Gareth to come to the party. I hope he turns up.



语法剖析

主语

转述动词(过去时)

宾语

不定式

其他句子成分

Ellie

reminded

me

to buy

some milk.

宾语指明倾听者。

不定式常常表达命令、指示或建议。

46 对否定句的间接引述

间接引语中的否定句和直接引语中的否定句构成方式一样。“not”要与助动词连用，没有助动词时要与主要动词连用。

参见：

一般现在时否定句 2

一般过去时否定句 8 动词类型 49

46.1 对助动词否定进行转述

当直接引语使用了“do not”“is not”或“has not”时，“do”“is”或“has”需要改变时态，主要动词无须改变时态。



I **don't** work on weekends.

一般现在时否定。

He said he **didn't** work on weekends.

一般过去时否定。



更多例证



I **don't** want to drive. I'd rather walk.

Sue said she **didn't** want to drive. She'd rather walk.



The car **isn't** starting.

They told me the car **wasn't** starting.



They **haven't** arrived on time because of the car.

Fay said they **hadn't** arrived on time because of the car.



46.2 对其他动词否定进行转述

如果转述动词后接宾语和不定式，“not”要放在宾语和不定式之间。



You shouldn't sign the contract.

Our lawyer **advised** me **not** to sign the contract.



添加“not”，构成间接引语的否定形式。

更多例证



Don't eat any more cake. It's bad for you.

I think I **persuaded** Evan **not** to eat any more cake.



Don't go in the water. It's dangerous.

The lifeguard **warned** me **not** to go in the water.



I don't think you should stand so near the edge.

My friend **warned** me **not** to stand near the edge.



You must not lose your passport while you're away.

My dad **reminded** me **not** to lose my passport.



Don't draw on the walls!

My dad **told** me **not** to draw on the walls.



47 间接问句

间接问句用于转述某人过去问过的问题。间接问句和直接问句的词序不同。

参见：
疑问句的构成 34
特殊疑问句 36 动词类型 49

47.1 对特殊疑问句进行转述

对特殊疑问句进行转述时，要调换主语和动词的位置。



更多例证



语法剖析



47.2 对含有“DO”的疑问句进行转述

若直接问句中有“do”，
转述时要将其省略。



Let's bake a cake. What **do** we **need**?

He asked me what we **needed**.

变为间接问句后，疑问句中的助动词“do”要省略。

经常使用动词过去式。



更多例证

Why **do** you **want** to work for us?



They asked me why I **wanted** to work for them.

What **do** you **think**?



He asked me what I **thought**.

What **does** a florist **do**?



James asked me what a florist **does**.

时态不一定变化。

Where **do** Jay and Seb **live**?



Paul asked me where Jay and Seb **live**.

Who **do** you **know** at work?



She asked me who I **knew** at work.

What **do** you usually **knit**?



He asked me what I usually **knit**.

⚠ 常见错误 间接问句的词序

在间接问句中，要
调换主语和动词的
顺序，不能采用疑
问句语序。

He asked me where **the station is**. ✓

He asked me where **is the station**. ✗

47.3 对一般疑问句进行转述

如果直接引语中疑问句的回答是“yes”或“no”，对其进行转述时要使用“if”或“whether”。“whether”比“if”更正式。



直接问句。

Are you meeting your sales targets?

My boss asked me if I was meeting my sales targets.

间接问句中使用“if”或“whether”。



更多例证



Will you be at the meeting on Monday?

Kara asked whether I would be at the meeting on Monday.

由“if”或“whether”引导的间接问句，句中“asked”后面的宾语可以省略。



Do you want to stay for dinner?

Ian asked me if we wanted to stay for dinner.

由“if”或“whether”引导的间接问句，省略助动词“do”。



语法剖析

主语

“ASKED”

宾语

“IF / WHETHER”

主语

动词

其他句子成分

My boss

asked

me

if

whether

I

was

meeting my sales targets.

宾语可以省略。

“if”和“whether”意思一样，但“whether”更为正式。

47.4 对含有“OR”的疑问句进行转述

“if”或“whether”还可以对含有“or”的直接问句进行转述。



Does **Jo** want tea **or** coffee?

Jo, Tom asked me **if you wanted** tea **or** coffee.

动词时态要改变。



更多例证



Do **you** want to go by car **or** by train?

He asked **whether we wanted** to go by car **or** by train.



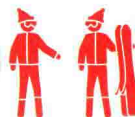
Do **you** prefer wine **or** champagne?

Jo asked **me if I preferred** wine **or** champagne.



Did **you** choose to ski **or** snowboard?

He asked **whether I chose** to ski **or** snowboard.



Did **you** decide to walk **or** run?

Harry asked **if I decided** to walk **or** run.



48 间接引语总览

48.1 改变间接引语中的指代意义

一些单词有很多指代意义，这就意味着在不同语境下它们的词义是不同的。为了保留直接引语的语意，间接引语常常会改变句子的时态、代词以及时间状语。



I **want** to become a police officer.

时态

时态通常“后退”。

She said she **wanted** to become a police officer.



48.2 现在时转述动词

转述动词可以是现在时。在这种情况下，句子的时态不用改变。

I don't like ice cream.



She **says** she doesn't like ice cream.

转述动词用现在时。

主要动词时态不变。



I've never tried ice cream.



She **tells** me she's never tried ice cream.

在现在时中，使用“tell”比使用“say”更具强调意味。



为保证意思一致，直接引语变间接引语时，句中的一些单词需要作出变化，其他单词保持不变。

参见：

一般现在时 1 一般过去时 7

间接引语的时态 44 情态动词 56 人称代词 77

代词



I did well in **my** exams.

She said she did well in **her** exams.

将“my”变为“her”，用以指代原来的说话者。



时间状语



I'll apply for the job **tomorrow**.

She said she'd apply for the job **the next day**.

将“tomorrow”变为“the next day”，与原句保持意义一致。



48.3 间接引语中的情态动词

除了“will”和“can”外，大多数情态动词与其他动词的用法不相同。无论直接引语是什么时态，变间接引语时，句中情态动词的时态都保持不变。

I **might** buy some ice cream.



She said she **might** buy some ice cream.

情态动词与直接引语的时态保持一致。



I **could** have bought one.



She said she **could** have bought one.

被转述的动词与直接引语的时态也保持一致。



49 动词类型

动词分为主要动词和助动词。主要动词描述行为、事件、人或物的状态。助动词对主要动词的意思进行辅助调整。

参见：
现在完成时 11
情态动词 56

49.1 主要动词

主要动词是句子中最重要的动词，可以用来描述行为或状态，还可用于连接主语和某个描述。

“play”是主要动词，描述的是某种行为。

I **play** tennis every Wednesday evening.



49.2 助动词

助动词与主要动词一起使用，用于对主要动词的意思进行辅助调整。助动词最常用于辅助构成各种时态。

现在完成时



此处的“has”是助动词，用于构成现在完成时。

在没有助动词的陈述句中，使用助动词“do”构成对应的疑问句和否定句。



情态动词属于助动词范畴，用于辅助调整其对应的主要动词的意思，用于表述诸如可能性或责任、义务一类的各种概念。



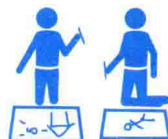
49.3 系动词

系动词用于描述人和物的状态。系动词连接主语和补语，帮助补语对主语起到定义或修饰作用。

The children **are** happy.

主语。

补语。



更多例证

Harry **looks** just like his father.



This **seems** like a lovely place to live.



Whatever you're cooking **smells** delicious!



After leaving school, she **became** a teacher.

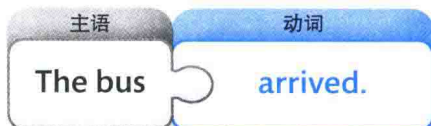


49.4 及物动词和不及物动词

一些动词后要接宾语，宾语可以是名词也可以是短语，是动作的承受者。可以接宾语的动词被称为及物动词。



一些动词后面不可以接宾语，被称为不及物动词。



一些动词既可以用作及物动词，也可以用作不及物动词。



“read”后既可接宾语，也可不接宾语。

一些动词可以接双宾语，其中一个直接宾语，一个是间接宾语。



间接宾语是动作的受益者。

直接宾语是动作“gave”的承受者。



50 行为动词和状态动词

描述行为或事件的动词被称为“行为动词”或“动态动词”；
描述状态的动词被称为“状态动词”或“静态动词”。

参见：

一般现在时 1 现在进行时 4
一般过去时 7 过去进行时 10

50.1 行为动词和状态动词

行为动词常用于描述人或物的行为。状态动词常用于描述人或物的状态或感受。

行为动词

I { read / am reading } a book.



行为动词可以是一般时
也可以是进行时。

状态动词

I love books.



状态动词一般较少使用进行时。

更多例证

Dominic is eating ice cream.



I want to go away somewhere.



Gayle is lying on the couch.



She has two cats and a dog.



I don't eat meat. I'm a vegetarian.

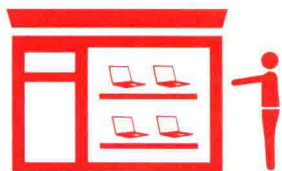


We've known each other for years.



⚠ 常见错误 状态动词使用进行时

多数状态动词不能使用进行时。



状态动词通常只能使用一般时。

I want a new laptop. ✓

I am wanting a new laptop. ✗

状态动词一般不用进行时。

50.2 状态动词的进行时

一些动词既可以作为行为动词，也可以作为状态动词。当这类动词描述行为时，可以使用进行时。

行为



I **am thinking** about taking up fencing.

[此时此刻，我正在考虑学击剑。]



The chef **was tasting** his soup.

[厨师正在品尝汤的味道。]



I'm **seeing** some friends for lunch tomorrow.

[明天我要见一些朋友。]

状态



I **think** fencing is a great sport.

[在我看来，击剑是很棒的运动。]



This soup **tasted** disgusting!

[汤很难喝。]



I **saw** some birds at the park yesterday.

[公园里有一些鸟。]

一些状态动词可以使用进行时，但仍带有其静态动词的含义。使用进行时，是为了强调变化、发展或暂时性情况。

进行时



Are you **feeling** better today?
You **seemed** sick yesterday.



We're **sounding** much better than usual!



My leg **is** really **hurting** this morning.

一般时



How do you **feel** about modern art?



I wish they'd stop. They **sound** terrible!



My leg **hurts**. Maybe I should go to the doctor.

51 不定式和分词

不定式和分词是动词的两种形式，很少独立使用，但在构成其他形式或结构时很重要。

参见：
现在进行时 4
现在完成时 11

51.1 不定式

不定式是动词最简单的形式。英语的动词有两种不定式形式。

有时不定式由“to”加动词构成。这种形式有时又被称作完整不定式或带“to”的不定式。



当不定式不带“to”时，被称作原形或光秃不定式。



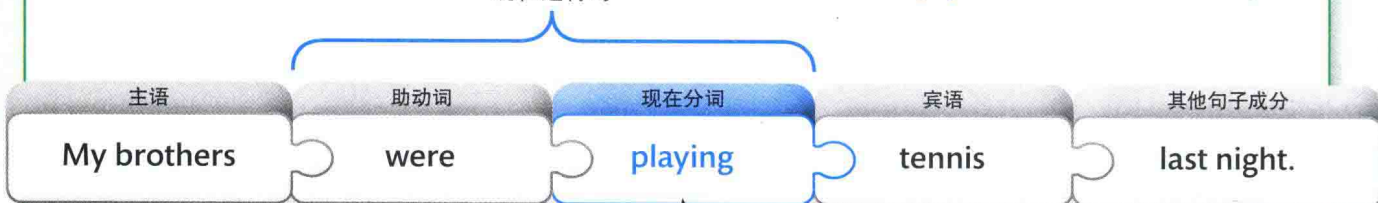
51.2 现在分词和动名词

现在分词和动名词的构成方式都是在动词原形基础上加“-ing”。它们的拼写方式相同，但在句子中的功能不同。

现在分词 多与助动词连用，构成进行时。

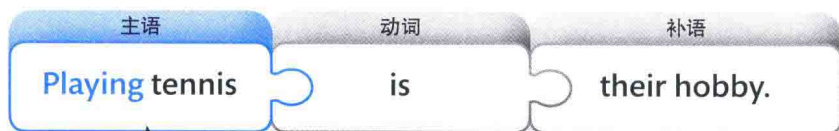


现在进行时



现在分词用于构成过去进行时。

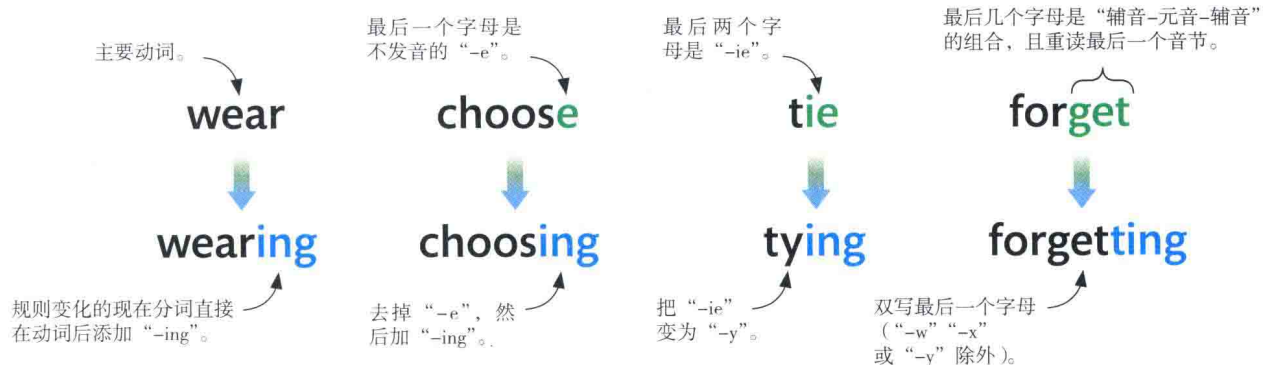
动名词 是指作为名词使用的动词，有时被称作“名词化动名词”。



此处的“playing”是动名词，与“tennis”共同构成句子的主语。

51.3 现在分词和动名词拼写规则

所有现在分词和动名词都是在动词原形基础上添加“-ing”构成的。部分动词原形在加“-ing”前要稍作变化。

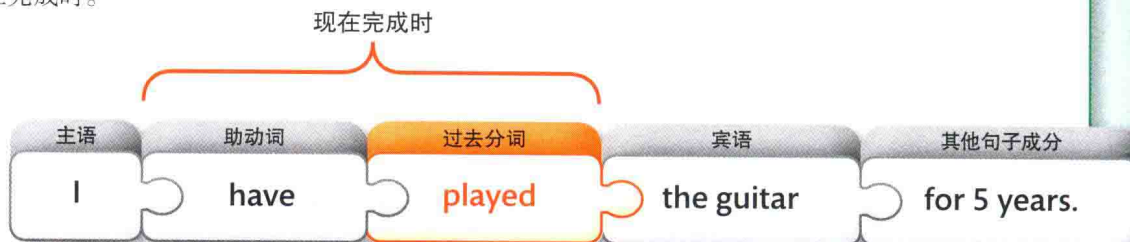


更多例证

 <p>They're whispering to each other.</p> <p>由于“per”不重读，所以最后一个字母不双写。</p>	 <p>I'm enjoying my vacation.</p> <p>如果最后一个字母是“-y”，则不双写。</p>
 <p>She's swimming in the ocean.</p> <p>由于最后几个字母是“辅音-元音-辅音”的组合，所以双写最后一个字母。</p>	 <p>He's making a cake.</p> <p>动词中的“-e”被省略。</p>
 <p>Connor went walking in the hills.</p>	 <p>Paul was told off for lying.</p>
 <p>Sarah loves riding her horse.</p>	 <p>The audience started clapping.</p>
 <p>Stop wasting so much paper!</p>	 <p>She started looking for a new job.</p>
 <p>The children were sitting on the floor.</p>	 <p>I'm choosing the new intern.</p>

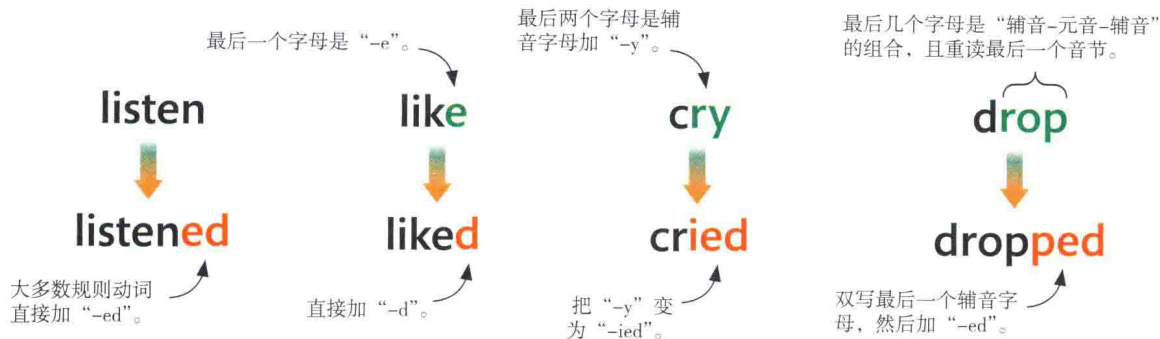
51.4 过去分词

过去分词与助动词连用，构成完成时，如：现在完成时。



51.5 过去分词拼写规则

规则变化的过去分词是在动词原形的基础上加“-ed”构成的。部分动词原形在加“-ed”前要稍作变化。



更多例证



I should have **covered** my work. Susanna has **copied** all my answers.



You haven't **passed** the exam this time, but at least you have **improved**.



I had **planned** to take the kids to the beach, but the weather's terrible.



By this time next week, I will have **finished** all of my assignments.



My boss has **asked** me to come in early again tomorrow. I'm so tired!

51.6 不规则变化的过去分词

很多英语单词的过去分词变化并不规则，变化后的分词与动词原形差别很大。

I **buy** new clothes every month.

I have just **bought** a new coat.

过去分词



更多例证

原形	过去分词	示例
be	been	You're late. Where have you been ?
become	become	This has become a real problem.
begin	begun	The class has already begun , so be quiet.
choose	chosen	Which subjects have you chosen to study?
do	done	My son has done a lot for the local community.
feel	felt	I haven't felt very well for over a week now.
know	known	Sonia would have known how to solve this problem.
find	found	The police have found the suspect.
forget	forgotten	My husband has forgotten our anniversary again.
go	gone	Helen has gone to Peru. She'll be back next week.
have	had	You look so different! Have you had a haircut?
make	made	I have made a cake for your birthday.
say	said	Jerry has said he'll be making a presentation.
see	seen	After this evening, I'll have seen this show six times.
sing	sung	This will be the first time she's sung in public.
tell	told	Has anyone told you the news? Kate's pregnant!
understand	understood	Has everyone understood the instructions?
write	written	I sent the email as soon as I had written it.

52 动词搭配

一些动词只能接动名词，一些只能接不定式，还有一些既可以接动名词也可以接不定式。这些动词常用于表述希望、计划或感受。

参见：
动词类型 49
不定式和分词 51

52.1 后接不定式的动词

在英语中，一些动词之后接带“to”的不定式可用于表示某人计划做某事或希望做某事。



更多例证

无论主要动词是什么时态，不定式的形式都不改变。



I'm **waiting to play** badminton, but my friend is running late.

We **wanted to play** baseball yesterday, but it was raining.

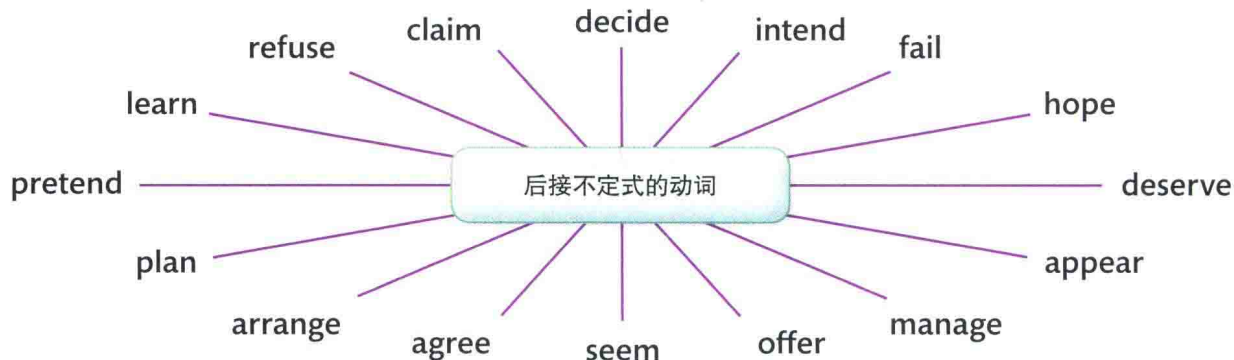


My car broke down, but my friend **offered to drive** me home.

Ron **decided to learn** how to play the trombone.



其他后接不定式的动词



52.2 后接动名词的动词

在英语中，一些动词后接动名词可用于表示某人对某个活动的感受。

I **enjoy** **swimming**.

动词表述对某项活动的感受。

描述活动的单词使用动名词形式。



更多例证



He doesn't **feel like playing** tennis tonight.



We really **dislike jogging**.
We're so out of shape!



Do you **miss skiing** now that summer is here?



I really **enjoy running** marathons.

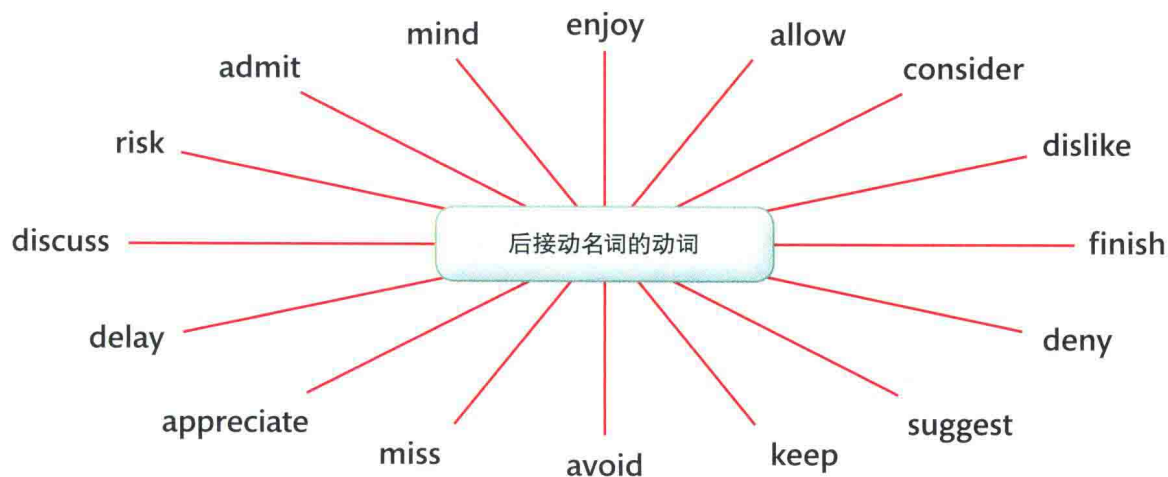


Would you **consider applying** for a promotion?



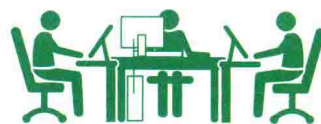
He doesn't **mind staying** late at work when he has to.

其他后接动名词的动词



52.3 后接不定式或动名词的动词 (意思相同)

有些动词可以接动名词 (“-ing” 形式) 或带 “to” 的不定式, 两种形式意思差别不大或没有差别, 常常可以替换使用。



I like { to work
working } in an open-plan office with a team.

更多例证

Emails are really awkward. I prefer { to meet
meeting } in person.



After a short stop, they continued { to drive
driving } toward the campsite.



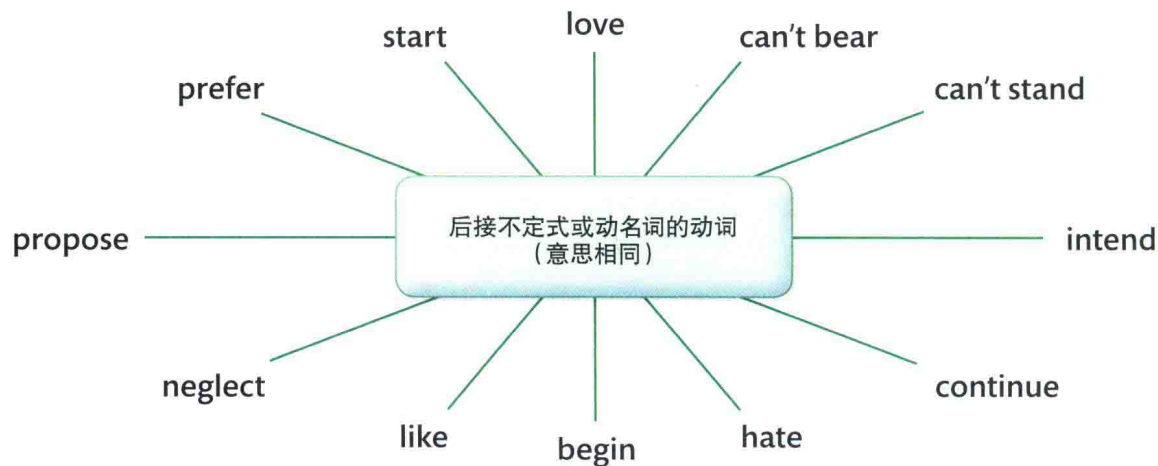
Once she had found a seat, she began { to write
writing } her essay.



Why isn't the bus here yet? I really can't stand { to be
being } late.



其他后接不定式或动名词的动词 (意思相同)



52.4 后接不定式或动名词的动词 (意思不同)

一些动词后接动词的形式不同, 意思也不同。不定式用于描述主要动词动作的目的。动名词常用于描述与主要动词动作同时发生的活动。



He **stopped to talk** to her
in the office before lunch.

[他原本正在办公室里走动, 为了跟她说话而停了下来。]



She **stopped talking** to him
and rushed to a meeting.

[她原本正在和他说话, 为了去做其他事而停止了对话。]

更多例证

动词 + 不定式

She **forgot to send** the email,
so her team never received the update.

[她没有发邮件。]

He **went on to write** the report
once the meeting had finished.

[他开完会然后写报告。]

I **regret to tell** you the unhappy news.

Your flight has been delayed.

[我不得不告诉你坏消息, 并对此表示遗憾。]

Did you **remember to meet** David?
Your meeting was scheduled for today.

[你本应去见David。你记得这件事吗?]

动词 + 动名词

She **forgot sending** the email,
so she sent it a second time.

[她已经发过邮件了, 但她忘了。]

He **went on writing** the report all
evening. It took hours.

[他原本就在写报告, 然后继续写报告。]

I **regret telling** you the unhappy news.

I can see it has upset you.

[我希望当初自己没有告诉你这个坏消息, 因为
现在这个消息让你很烦躁。]

Did you **remember meeting** David?
I'd forgotten that we had already met him.

[你先前见过David。你记得吗?]

53 及物动词搭配

一些动词可以接宾语，这些动词被称为及物动词。当这些动词后接不定式或动名词时，宾语必须放在动词和不定式或动名词之间。

参见：
动词类型 49
不定式和分词 51

53.1 后接宾语和不定式的动词

一些后接不定式的动词必须同时接宾语，宾语要置于不定式之前。

动词 + 宾语 + 不定式

My computer **allows me to work** on two screens at once.



语法剖析

主语

动词

宾语

不定式

其他句子成分

My computer

allows

me

to work

on two screens.

更多例证

Emma's brother **wants her to turn** down the television.



Giorgio **bought a new suit to wear** to his brother's wedding.



The building manager **will tell you to leave** the building if there's a fire.



Helena's mother **is always reminding her to do** the dishes.



Jonathan's teacher **expects him to do** better next time.



I've **asked my boyfriend to buy** some bread and milk on his way home.



⚠ 常见错误 动词“WANT”的搭配

当“want”后接宾语和不定式时，不能使用“that”从句。



“want”后应接宾语和不定式。
I **want him to come** to the exhibit with me. ✓

“want”后不能接“that”从句。
I **want that he comes** to the exhibit with me. ✗

53.2 动词 + 宾语 + 动名词搭配

一些后接动名词的动词必须同时接宾语，宾语要置于动名词之前。

动词 + 宾语 + 动名词

Hayley **heard the boss interviewing** the new secretary.



语法剖析

主语

动词

宾语

动名词

其他句子成分

Hayley

heard

the boss

interviewing

the new secretary.

更多例证

I **remember Arnold leaving** the house at around 10 o'clock.



Jeremy **spends every winter snowboarding** in the Alps.



I really **don't like anyone talking** to me while I'm trying to study.

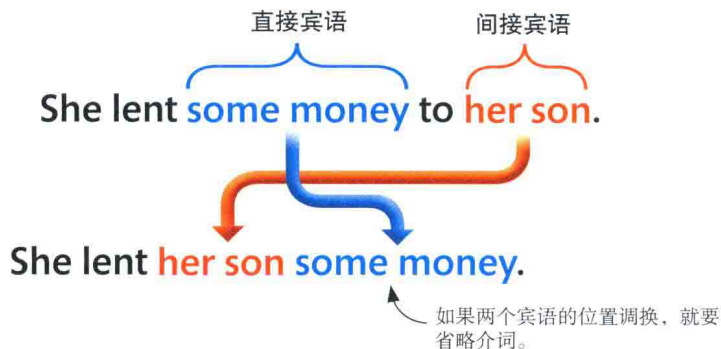


My sister loves science. I can **see her becoming** a doctor one day.



53.3 双宾语动词

直接宾语是指动作的承受者（人或物），间接宾语接收同样的动作。如果间接宾语是句子的重点，应将其置于直接宾语之后，并且加上“to”或“for”。



更多例证



Carolina sold { **her house** to **her younger brother**.
her younger brother **her house**.



Federico bought { **a car** for **his parents**.
his parents **a car**.

53.4 含有代词的双宾语

如果直接宾语是代词，那么必须将其置于间接宾语之前。

She lent **it** to **her son**. ✓

She lent **her son** **it**. ✗

如果间接宾语是代词，那么既可以将其置于直接宾语之前，也可以将其置于直接宾语之后。

She lent **some money** to **him**. ✓

She lent **him** **some money**. ✓

更多例证



Carolina sold { **it** to **her younger brother**.
it to **him**.
him **her house**.



Federico bought { **it** for **his parents**.
it for **them**.
them **a car**.

54 不及物动词搭配

一些动词搭配中含有介词。介词后不能接不定式，所以这类动词搭配只能使用动名词。

参见：

不定式和分词 51

动词搭配 52 介词 105

54.1 动词加介词和动名词

如果介词后接动词，那么该动词必须是动名词形式（“-ing”形式）。



Jasmine **decided against taking** the job.

动名词。

更多例证

Zac and Penny **are thinking about taking** a trip around the world.



My grandmother **is always worrying about forgetting** her house keys.



54.2 动词加宾语、介词和动名词

如果动词后接宾语，那么该宾语必须置于动词和介词之间。



He **congratulated her on winning** the competition.

更多例证

Hilda **stopped her dog from running** away.



I **asked my mother about buying** a new computer, but she said no.



55 短语动词

一些英语动词包含两个或多个单词，一起使用时往往表示新的意思，这些动词被称为短语动词。

参见：

及物动词搭配 53 介词 105

可分短语动词 R20 不可分短语动词 R21

55.1 短语动词

短语动词由一个动词和一个或多个小品词（介词或副词）构成。小品词往往能够改变动词的意义。

短语动词
I **get up** early every day.
动词。 小品词。



语法剖析

小品词始终放在动词之后。动词按照一般规则适配主语。小品词的形式保持不变。

使用动词的第三人称单数“-s”。

He **gets up**. ✓

He **get ups**. ✗

错误。小品词的形式应保持不变。

He **up gets**. ✗

错误。小品词必须放在动词之后。

更多例证

You **work out** at the gym.



My cat sometimes **runs away**.



They don't **eat out** very often.



Do you always **turn up** late?



按照常规方式变疑问句。

按照常规方式变否定句。

He **doesn't go out** when he's tired.



She **chills out** in the evening.



We can **check into** the hotel now.



Do they **meet up** most weekends?



55.2 不同时态中的短语动词

当短语动词在不同时态中使用时，
短语动词中的动词形式需要变化，
但小品词不变。



小品词形式不变。

一般现在时

I **work out** every week.

一般过去时

I **worked out** yesterday.

现在进行时

I **am working out** right now.

“WILL” 引导的将来时

I **will work out** tomorrow.

更多例证



I **cleaned up** the kitchen last night.



Their car is always **breaking down**.



I think we're lost! We should have **looked up** the route.



She doesn't **dress up** very often.



You should **go over** your answers again.



I am **counting on** Rajiv to give the presentation next week.



I can't believe she **turned down** the job.



I **met up** with my friends last weekend.



I'm still **getting over** the flu.



When will they **grow up**?

55.3 可分短语动词

如果短语动词有直接宾语，有时可以将直接宾语置于动词和小品词之间。这样的短语动词被称为可分短语动词。

He is picking up litter.

宾语可以放在小品词之后。

He is picking litter up.

宾语还可以放在动词和小品词之间。

He is picking it up.

更多例证

I turned on the light.



I turned the light on.

Can you pick up that box?



Can you pick that box up?

You should throw away those old shoes.



You should throw those old shoes away.

I was annoyed because he woke up the baby.



I was annoyed because he woke her up.

I always fill up the water jug when it's empty.



I always fill it up when it's empty.

⚠ 常见错误 可分短语动词

如果可分短语动词的直接宾语是代词，那么这个代词只能放在动词和小品词之间。

代词。

He picked it up. ✓

此时，代词不能放在句子末尾。

He picked up it. ✗

55.4 不可分短语动词

一些短语动词不能分开。无论宾语是名词还是代词，都必须置于小品词之后，不能放在动词和小品词之间。



这里的动词和小品词
必须连在一起使用。

We had to run to **get on** the train. ✓

We had to run to get the train on. ✗

错误。宾语不能放在这里的
动词和小品词之间。

更多例证

I need to **go over** my notes.



I **ran into** her at the supermarket.



Susan really **takes after** her father, they're very similar.



Drop by the house any time you like.



I've **come across** a new recipe.



He **sleeps in** most Saturdays.



I'm **taking care of** my sister's children tonight.



They will have to **do without** a trip this summer.



It's great to **hear from** you!



Get on this bus for the beach.



Caterpillars **turn into** butterflies.



Get off that bicycle if you don't have a helmet.



He has **fallen behind** the rest of the class this year.



I am **looking into** visiting somewhere warm.



55.5 三个单词构成的短语动词

三个单词构成的短语动词包括一个动词、一个小品词和一个介词。此时，小品词和介词通常使动词具备了与其本身不同的意义。



语调

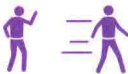
在口语中，重读应放在处于中间位置的单词上。

look up to **get along with** **look forward to**

更多例证



We have **run out of** coffee, so I'll get some more.



You're walking too fast, I can't **keep up with** you.



I must have dropped my keys when I was **getting out of** the car.

提示

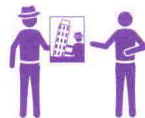
绝大多数（但不是全部）由三个单词构成的短语动词都是不可分的。

55.6 “GET BACK FROM”

根据情境，“get back from”可以是可分或不可分短语动词。

意为“从……返回”时，“get back from”是不可分短语动词。

I **got back from** Italy yesterday.



意为“从……处取回”时，“get back from”是可分短语动词。宾语必须置于“get”和“back”之间。

I need to **get the lawn mower back from** Tina.



55.7 基于短语动词形成的名词

一些名词是基于短语动词形成的，形式往往是将动词和小品词连在一起。读这类单词时，重读应放在动词上。



动词。

小品词。

The teacher asked me to **hand out** the exam papers.



The teacher gave us a **handout** for the lesson.

重音在第一个音节上。

有时这类名词会把小品词放在动词之前。此时，重读应放在小品词上。



Oh no! It was sunny and now it's **pouring down**.



We have a rainy season with daily **downpours**.

重读在第一个音节上。

更多例证

The company is trying to **cut back** on staff expenses.



Not another **cutback**! The company must be in serious trouble.

It's a shame that he wants to **drop out** of school.



We've had a surprisingly high percentage of **dropouts** in the class.

We want to **get away** and go somewhere sunny this winter.



A trip to Australia sounds like a fabulous **getaway**.

56 情态动词

情态动词是英语中很常见的动词，用于谈论各种事物，尤其是表示可能性、责任、义务以及推论。

参见：

一般现在时否定句 2

疑问句的构成 34 动词类型 49

56.1 情态动词的使用

英语中有很多情态动词。每个情态动词都能在多种语境中使用。

能力

I **can** speak three languages.
I **can't** read Latin because it's too difficult.
I **couldn't** study it when I was at school.



许可

You **can** have more cake if you want.
You **may** take as much as you like.
Could I have another slice of cake?



要求

Can / **Could** you give me a ride home later?
Would you email James for me, please?
Will you lock up the office tonight?



主动提供帮助

Can I help you with those?
May I take one of those for you?
Shall I carry some of your bags?



意见和建议

You **should** / **ought to** go to the doctor.
You **could** try the new medicine.



责任、义务

You **must** arrive on time for work.
You **must not** be late for work.



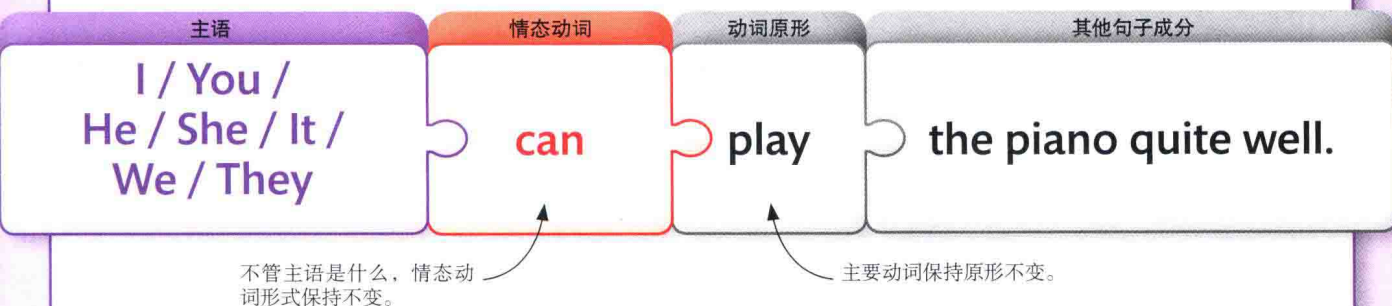
逻辑推论

It **can't** be Jane because she's on vacation.
It **could** / **might** / **may** be Dave. I don't know.
It **must** be Tom, since nobody else ever calls.



56.2 情态动词的形式

情态动词有不少共同点。比如：不需要根据主语变换自身形式；后面常接主要动词的原形；其疑问句和否定句不需要助动词“do”。



变否定句时，在情态动词和主要动词之间加“not”。

You **should** run a marathon.

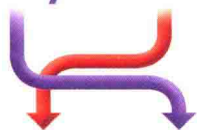


You **should not** run a marathon.



变疑问句时，调换主语和情态动词的位置。

They **should** visit the castle.



Should they visit the castle?



“ought to”和“have to”是两个例外，因为它们与句中动词原形之间有“to”。“ought to”是“should”的正式表达，“have to”的意思和“must”相同。这两个词与普通动词的使用方法一样。

You **{ ought to
have to }** learn how to drive.



情态动词“can”用于描述某人的能力。通过不同的时态可以表示过去和现在不同时间的能力。

参见：

一般现在时 1

“will”引导的将来时 18

57.1 “CAN / CANNOT / CAN'T”

句子中的“can”应置于主语和主要动词之间。“can”后面的动词要用原形。

I **can** ride a bicycle.



“can”的形式无须随
主语改变而改变。

He **can** play the guitar.



动词原形。

“can”的否定形式是“cannot”或“can't”。

I { **cannot** / **can't** } sing jazz songs.



“can't”是更为常用的否定形式。

提示

这里的“cannot”
是一个单词，不
能分开写。

更多例证

Janet **can** play tennis.



He **cannot** climb the tree.



Bob **can** swim well.



They **can't** lift the box.



语法剖析

主语

“CAN / CANNOT / CAN'T”

动词原形

宾语

I / You / He / She
It / We / They

can
cannot
can't

ride

a bicycle.

57.2 “COULD” 表示过去的的能力

“could” 是 “can” 的过去式，用于表述过去的某种能力。可以用 “when” 加某个时间设定来表述某人具有这种能力的时间。



时间可以通过表示年龄、日期、年份的短语进行设定。

I **can't** climb trees now, but I **could** when I was younger.

表述现在的能力。

表述过去的的能力。

更多例证

When I was a student, I **could** study all night before an exam.



When Milo was eight, he **could** play the violin.



I **couldn't** go to China last year because it was too expensive.



Last year she **couldn't** run very far, but yesterday she ran a marathon.



否定形式。

57.3 将来时中的“CAN”

从语法上讲，“can” 不能描述将来，描述将来要用 “will be able to”。

At the moment, I **can** play the trombone quite well.



If I work harder, I **will be able to** play at concerts.

“will can” 是错的。

变否定时使用 “not able to” 或 “unable to”。

Unfortunately, I **can't** read music very well.



If I don't learn, { I **won't be able** } to join the orchestra.
{ **will be unable** }

还可以使用 “will be unable to”，但是使用频率不高。

58 情态动词表示许可、要求以及提供帮助

“can” “could” 和 “may” 用于请求许可做某事，或者请某人帮自己做某事，还可用于表示主动向别人提供帮助。

参见：
动词类型 49
情态动词 56

58.1 请求许可和提出要求

“can” 是请求许可或提出要求时最常用的情态动词。

Can I have some popcorn?



Yes, you can.

非正式语境中作回答也用 “can”。

在商务会谈或与陌生人交流等正式语境中，使用 “could” 替代 “can”。

Excuse me, could I sit here, please?



I'm sorry, but that seat is taken.

作否定回答时，为了更加礼貌，可以加上 “I'm sorry” 或 “I'm afraid”。

礼貌地请求别人时，要加上 “please”。

正式语境中还可以使用 “may”。

May I make an appointment?



Of course.

更多例证

Can I borrow your pen?



Can I have this in a smaller size?



Excuse me, could you open the door for me?



May I reserve a table for 7pm?



58.2 提供帮助

“can” 和 “may” 还可以表示主动帮助某人做某事。

Can I help you carry those?

Yes, please.



只有在正式语境中才用 “may”。

May I take your coat?

Yes, thank you.



更多例证

Can I get you a drink?

That would be lovely.



My computer's broken again!

Can I help at all?



Good evening.
May I take your order?

Yes, please.



Which way is the elevator?

It's on the left.
May I help you with your bags?



58.3 “SHALL” 用于表示提供帮助和建议

“shall” 用于询问某人是否赞同某个建议，这种用法在美式英语中比较少见。

That bag looks heavy. Shall I carry it for you?

Yes, please.



Shall I open the window?

Good idea.
It's far too hot in here.



情态动词“could”可以用于提出建议。“could”的语气比“should”弱，用于委婉地提出建议。

参见：
条件句 29 动词类型 49
情态动词 56

59.1 “SHOULD”表示劝告

当劝告的语气较为强烈时，用“should”。

It's very sunny. You **should** wear a hat.

“should”放在提出的劝告之前。



更多例证

It might rain. You **should** take your umbrella with you.



You're sick. I don't think you **should** go to work today.



There's ice on the roads. You **shouldn't** drive tonight.



Which hat **should** I buy? They're all so cool.



语法剖析

主语

You

“SHOULD”

should

主要动词

wear

其他句子成分

a hat.

“should”是情态动词，不管主语是什么，其形式都无须改变。

“should”后的动词用原形。

59.2 “OUGHT TO” 表示劝告

“ought to” 是 “should” 更为正式的表述方法，但不如 “should” 常用，一般不用于否定句或疑问句中。



You { **should**
ought to } wear a scarf. It's very cold outside.

59.3 “IF I WERE YOU”

在英语的第二条件句中，“if I were you” 用于劝告。句中的劝告内容用 “I would” 引出。

I don't know
if I should
take this job.



If I were you, I would take it.

在这种语境下，用
“were”，不用 “was”。

劝告的内容放在 “I would” 之后。

更多例证

I'm going to the
concert tonight.



If I were you, I'd leave early. The traffic is awful.

I think I'll buy
this shirt.



I wouldn't buy it if I were you. I don't like the pattern.

劝告的内容可以放在
前面，意思不变。

“if” 前不加逗号。

59.4 “HAD BETTER”

“had better” 也可用于提出语气强烈或紧迫的劝告，如果不听从劝告，会产生不好的后果。



{ **You had better**
You'd better } leave for school! It's already 8.45.

59.5 “COULD” 表示建议

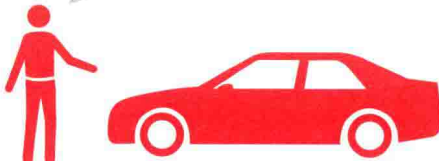
“could” 常用于对如何解决问题提出建议。它表述解决问题的某种可行方案，但并不一定推荐该方案。

“could” 表明这个行为具有可行性，也许能够解决问题。

I hate my car!



Well, you **could** get a new one!



更多例证

You **could** study science in college.



We **could** learn English in Canada next year.



If they need more space, they **could** buy a bigger house.



语法剖析

主语

You

“COULD”

could

主要动词

get

其他句子成分

a new car.

“could” 是情态动词，
不管主语是什么，其形式都无须改变。

主要动词保持原形。

59.6 “COULD” 和 “OR” 表示建议

当使用“could”提出建议时，经常有多个候选建议。

Our friends are coming over for dinner, but the oven's broken.

We could make a salad **or** we could order a pizza.

“or” 用于引出另外一个替代选项。

更多例证

I can't decide what to make for dinner tonight.

Well, you could make a curry **or** lasagne.

“or” 后面无须重复情态动词。

What should I wear to Jan's wedding?

You could wear your new dress **or** a skirt.

如果两个建议的主要动词一样，“or”后面也无须重复出现该动词。

59.7 表示推荐

对某事进行推荐或提出建议的一个最常用的方法就是使用情态动词。

一般的建议。

You { could might } visit the park. It's beautiful.

较强烈的建议。

You { should ought to } visit the castle. It's great.

非常强烈的建议。

You must visit the palace. It is beautiful!

提示

为了表示强调，可以在“should”“ought to”和“must”之前加“really”。

60 情态动词表示义务

谈论义务或需要做的事情时，可以使用“have to”或“must”。这两个词常常用于给出重要指示。

参见：

“will”引导的将来时 18
动词类型 49 情态动词 56

60.1 情态动词表示义务

“must”和“have to”都表示做某事是一种强烈需求或义务。



You **must** / **have to** rest, or your leg won't heal.

“must not”表示强烈禁止，用以表明某事是不被允许的。



You **must not** get your bandage wet, or your leg might not heal properly.

“don't have to”表示做某事是没有必要的，或者说没有义务去做某事。



You **don't have to** come again. Your leg is better.

更多例证

He **must** take two pills each morning and evening for the next two weeks.



She **must not** go back to work until her back is better.



Do I have to go back to the doctor again? I'm feeling so much better now.



语法剖析

不管主语是什么，“must”的形式都无须变化，但是当主语是第三人称单数时，“have to”要变为对应的“has to”。两种形式后面都要接主要动词的原形。

主语	“MUST / HAVE TO”	主要动词	其他句子成分
She	must has to must not doesn't have to	take	this medicine.

⚠ 常见错误 “MUST NOT” 和 “DON'T HAVE TO”

“must not” 和 “don't have to” 的意思并不相同。“must not” 用于给出指示，表示禁止某人做某事。“don't have to” 用于告诉某人做某事是没有必要的。

You **must not** use a calculator during this exam.

[考试期间使用计算器是违反规定的。]



You **don't have to** use a calculator, but it might be useful.

[你可以使用计算器，但并不是必须要使用计算器。]



60.2 将来时中的“MUST”和“HAVE TO”

“must” 没有将来时形式。“have to” 的将来时形式是在其前面加助动词 “will”。

In some countries, people **must** / **have to** recycle. It's the law.

In the future, I think everyone **will have to** recycle.

“will must” 是错的。



“must not” 没有将来时形式。“don't have to” 的将来时形式是把 “don't” 变为 “will not” 或 “won't”。

One day, I hope I **will not have to** work so hard.



60.3 过去时中的“MUST”和“HAVE TO”

“must” 没有过去时形式。表述过去要用 “have to” 的过去时形式。

For most jobs, you **must** / **have to** use a computer.

In the past, you **didn't have to** use a computer.



61 情态动词表示推测

情态动词也可以用于表述事物的可能性。可以用来猜想和推测过去发生的事情或现在正在发生的事情。

参见：

动词类型 49

不定式和分词 51 情态动词 56

61.1 猜想和推断

情态动词 “might” 和 “could” 用于表述带有不确定性的事物。

“might” 和 “could” 可用来表示不确定。

John has a sore ankle. It **{ might could }** be broken.

不管主语是什么，情态动词形式保持不变。

情态动词后的主要动词一般用原形。



否定形式用 “might not”。

It's not very swollen, so it **might not** be serious.

“not” 置于情态动词之后。



“must” 常用于推断现在的事情。

John **must** be very bored at home. He's usually so active.



当某件事情确定不可能发生的时候，用 “cannot” 和 “can't”。

John's leg **{ cannot can't }** be broken. He walked to the doctor.



更多例证

Fay's got a sore throat and isn't feeling well. She **might** have a cold.



I was so sick last week that I **couldn't** get out of bed.



My eyes are itchy and I have a runny nose. It **could** be hay fever.



I **can't** have the flu because I don't have a high temperature.



61.2 对过去的猜想和推断

当说话者对发生过某事十分确定时，使用“must have”加过去分词的形式表示对过去的猜想。

He just disappeared. Aliens **must have** taken him.

过去分词。



当说话者对过去是否发生过某事不确定时，可以使用“may”“might”或“could”代替“must”。

They { **might**
may
could } **have** taken him to another planet.



当说话者确定没有发生过某事时，使用“can't”或“couldn't”。

It { **can't**
couldn't } **have** been aliens. They don't exist.



更多例证



Bethan didn't return my call yesterday. She **must have** been busy.



She **might have** forgotten to call me back.



She **might not have** written down my number correctly.



Paula **can't have** been at the party last night, she was at work.



I didn't see who knocked on the door, but it **may have** been the mailman.



What happened to my vase? The cat **must have** knocked it over.

62 情态动词表示可能性

情态动词可以用来表示可能性或不确定性。这种情况下，情态动词“might”最为常用。

参见：

一般现在时 1 不定式和分词 51
情态动词 56

62.1 “MIGHT” 表示可能性

“might” 与不同短语连用，可以表示过去、现在和将来的可能性。

过去的可能性

“MIGHT” + “HAVE” + 过去分词

I can't find the compass. I **might have dropped** it earlier.



现在的可能性

“MIGHT” + 动词原形

I don't remember this path. We **might be** lost.



将来的可能性

“MIGHT” + 动词原形 + 未来时间

It's very cold outside. It **might snow** later on.



更多例证

We **might have taken** a wrong turn at the river.



It **might be** windy at the top of the mountain.



Joe **might not come** walking with us next weekend.

“might” 后接 “not”，用以构成否定句。



提示

含有“might”的疑问句仅用于十分正式的场合。

62.2 “MIGHT” 表示不确定性

在带有“might”的句子中添加其他短语，可以用来强调事情的不确定性。



I **might** take the bus home. I'm not sure.

I **don't know**. I **might** have more pizza.



62.3 过去的可能性

与“might”一样，其他情态动词也可以用来表述可能发生过某事。



The copier isn't working. It $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{might} \\ \text{may} \\ \text{could} \end{array} \right\}$ have run out of paper.

[他认为复印机有可能没纸了。]

这些结构可以用来表述过去可能没有发生的事情。



You $\left\{ \begin{array}{c} \text{might not} \\ \text{may not} \end{array} \right\}$ have plugged it in correctly.

[他认为复印机可能没有插好电。]

只有说话者确定某件事没有发生时才能使用“could not”。



You **couldn't have** changed the ink correctly.

[他确定墨盒没有安装好。]

63 冠词

冠词很短，用在名词之前，指明名词所指代的是
一般事物还是特定事物。使用冠词需要遵循几条
规则。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

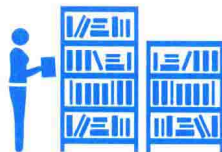
可数名词和不可数名词 70 形容词最高级 97

63.1 不定冠词

不定冠词“a”或“an”用于
表述一般性事物。

I work in **a library**.

此处使用“a”，表述
的是某人工作地点的
类型，而不是特指某
个建筑物。



I work in **an office**.

以元音开头的单词前
用“an”不用“a”。



不定冠词用于表述一类事物
的某一个，但具体是哪一个
并不确定。

We are trying to buy **a house**.

他们具体要买哪一套房
子还不确定。



不定冠词还用于表述某个名
词属于哪一组事物或哪一类
事物。

Canada is **a very cold country**.

加拿大属于“country”这个类
别，“cold”对其进行描述。



更多例证

Dogs make **a great family pet**.



否定句中的不定冠词与肯
定句中的用法一样。

Jim isn't **an artist**.



Do you want to come to **an exhibition**?

疑问句中的不定冠词与
陈述句中的用法一样。



Is there **a bank** near here?



63.2 “SOME”

在含有复数名词的句子中，要用“some”代替“a”或“an”。

描述一个东西时，用“a”或“an”。

“hotel”是单数。

There is **a hotel** in the town.



There are **some hotels** in the town.

数量大于一时，用“some”进行描述。

“hotels”是复数。



更多例证

There are **some banks** on Main Street.



There are **some children** in the park.



63.3 疑问句和否定句中的“SOME”和“ANY”

肯定句变疑问句或否定句时，句中的“some”要换成“any”。

There are **some cafés** in the town.

Are there **any cafés** in the town?



There are **some children** in the park.

There aren't **any children** in the park.



更多例证

Are there **any museums**?



There aren't **any parks**.



Are there **any swimming pools**?



There aren't **any factories**.



63.4 定冠词

定冠词“the”用于表述
每个人都知道的特定的
人或事。

We went on a tour and
the guide was excellent.

根据上下文可知这
里说的是这位导游。



当某个人或某件事已经
被提到，再次提及这个
人或这件事时要用“the”。

There's a bus trip or a lecture.
I'd prefer **the bus trip**.

前文已经提过乘
汽车旅行了。



最高级前要用定冠词。

The Colosseum is probably
the most famous site in Rome.

最高级短语。



表述独一无二的事物时，
也要用定冠词。

I'm going to **the Trevi Fountain**
before I leave.

特莱维喷泉是独一
无二的。



表述有独一无二头衔的
人也要用定冠词。

The Pope is visiting another
country this week.

“教皇”是个头衔。



更多例证

What is **the biggest**
country in the world?



I never take **the first train**
to work in the morning.



I love this restaurant.
The waiters are great.



I went to Paris and
climbed **the Eiffel Tower**.



Did you buy those shoes from
the shoe shop on Broad Lane?



The President will be
speaking on TV tonight.



63.5 “THE” 表示特指

“the” 后面可以跟介词短语或限定性关系从句，用于特指所谈论的事物。

The pictures **on the wall** are beautiful.

指明了具体谈论的是哪一幅画。



The dog **that I saw earlier** was adorable.

指明了具体谈论的是哪一条狗。



更多例证

The computers **in this office** are all too slow.



The books **that I bought** yesterday are for my son's birthday.



The students **in my classes** are very intelligent and dedicated.



The pastries **that they sell here** are absolutely delicious.



63.6 “THE” 加形容词指代一类人

一些形容词可以与定冠词连用，用于指代一群人或一类人。

Rich people have bought most of the new houses in this town.



Almost all the houses here are owned by **the rich**.

更多例证

Emergency treatment for **the injured** is essential.



Many charities try to protect **the poor**.



The media sometimes portrays **the young** as lazy.



The elderly often need the support of their families.



提示

这些词组具有复数意义，但“the youngs”这种表达是错误的。

63.7 零冠词

在一般语境中，不可数名词和复数名词无须加冠词，这就是零冠词。

I don't like the beach.
I get **sand** everywhere.

不可数名词。



You can see **famous sights** all over New York City.

复数名词。



谈论某些功能显而易见的地点或机构时，也无须使用冠词。

Liz is seven. She goes **to school** now.

她去学校学习，学校的功能就是供学生学习，所以无须使用冠词。



Larry works at **the school** in Park Street.

因为谈论的是他工作的那个学校，所以要加定冠词。

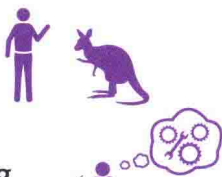


更多例证

Coffee is one of Colombia's major exports.



Kangaroos are common in Australia.



I am studying Engineering **in college** in Chicago.



Liz goes **to school** at 8am.



In the UK, **children** start school when they are five years old.



I've got so many **books**.



Paris is the capital of France.

地名常常使用零冠词。



Go **to bed**, Tom!



63.8 零冠词和“THE”的泛指

零冠词加复数名词，用于表述普通意义上的一类事物。定冠词加单数名词也可以表示这种意义。

指的是一种发明，而非单个望远镜。

Telescopes
The telescope } changed the way we see the night sky.



指的是一种动物，而非单个动物。

Cheetahs
The cheetah } can run faster than any other land animal.



指的是一种乐器，而非单个乐器。

Violins are
The violin is } often the key instrument in an orchestra.



63.9 姓名与定冠词、不定冠词

正常情况下，人名前适用零冠词。

This is my uncle, **Neil Armstrong**.



在一个人名前加定冠词，以区别于其他同名的人。

He's not **the Neil Armstrong**, is he?

[他不是那个名人阿姆斯特朗吧?]

这种情况下，“the”发“thee”音。



当关注点在某个人名本身而非所指代的人时，使用不定冠词。

I'm afraid there isn't
a **“Joseph Bloggs”** on the list.

[所说的这个名字不在名单上。]



64 冠词总览

64.1 冠词的使用

单数名词

单数名词前必须加冠词。根据是否特指，选择使用定冠词（“the”）或不定冠词（“a / an”）。



复数名词

不定冠词“a / an”不能与复数名词连用。当指代数量不明确时，要用“some”替换。



不可数名词

不定冠词通常不与不可数名词连用；定冠词用于描述特指意义的不可数名词；零冠词用于描述泛指意义的不可数名词。



不定冠词

“a”表明句中提到的是一般意义上的车，不是他想买的那辆车。

He wants to buy **a new car**. ✓

I've got **a beautiful green coat**. ✓

用“a”是因为这件绿色的外套是首次提到的新事物。

复数名词前不能用不定冠词。

Sam bought **a new shoes** today. ✗

I've just planted **some roses**. ✓

“some”表明栽了若干株玫瑰，但具体数量不清楚。

不可数名词前不能用“a / an”。

I left **a money** on the table. ✗

Children should drink **a milk**. ✗

定冠词和不定冠词的适用场景不同，同时，名词的单复数、可数与不可数都会影响定冠词和不定冠词的使用。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

可数名词和不可数名词 70

定冠词

“the” 指示的是对话双方都知道的那辆车。

Is **the** red car outside yours? ✓

I want to buy **the green coat** ✓
hanging in the window.

定冠词用于表示具有特指意义的复数名词。

The shoes Sam bought ✓
were very expensive.

The roses you planted ✓
outside are beautiful.

对方已经知道说话者所说的钱是哪些钱，所以使用定冠词。

I left **the money** on the table. ✓

Children should drink **the milk**. ✗

牛奶是不可数名词，这里指的是普遍意义上的牛奶，所以不能用定冠词。

零冠词

错误。单数可数名词前必须加冠词。

I've got **new car**. ✗

I've got beautiful **green coat**. ✗

因为“shoes”是复数名词，且句中泛指一般意义上的鞋，所以不用冠词。

Sam is always buying **shoes**. ✓

Roses are a type of flower. ✓

这里指的是一般意义上的玫瑰，不涉及数量。

这里的“money”是一般意义上的钱，所以不用加冠词。

She earns a lot of **money**. ✓

Children should drink **milk**. ✓

“this / that / these / those”

“this” “that” “these” “those” 可作限定词用在名词之前，对表述的名词进行限定；还可以用作代词，在句中替代名词。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69
人称代词 77 所有格 80

65.1 “THIS” 和 “THAT” 作限定词

“this” 和 “that” 只能对单数名词作出限定。距离较近的用 “this”，距离较远的用 “that”。



This house is too big.

房子离你很近。



That house is too small.

房子离你很远。



This job is great.

“this” 指示的是说话者现在的工作。



That job was boring.

“that” 指示的是过去的工作，现在已经不做。

“was” 是过去式。

“this” 还可以对最近发生的事情或现场的事物作出限定；“that” 可以对不在场的事物或过去发生的事情进行限定。

更多例证



This essay is proving to be really difficult.



That cake in the window looks incredible.



I like **this** rabbit so much I want to take it home.



I'd like to see **that** play this weekend.



When I eat out I always order **this** rice dish.



This show is great, but I didn't like **that** other show as much.

不可数名词之前只能用 “this” 和 “that”，不能用 “these” 或 “those”。

“that” 后面可以加 “other”，用来强调与第一个名词的不同。

65.2 “THESE” 和 “THOSE” 作限定词

“these” 和 “those” 只能对复数名词作出限定。距离较近或发生时间较近的用 “these”，距离较远或过去发生的用 “those”。

This cake is delicious.



These cakes are delicious.



“these” 是 “this” 的复数形式。 “these” 和 “those” 用在复数名词之前。

That sandwich tastes bad.



Those sandwiches look better.



“those” 是 “that” 的复数形式。 “these” 和 “those” 用在复数名词之前。

更多例证

These new shoes are hurting my feet.



I hope **these** exams go well.



I don't think **these** vegetables are very fresh.



These books are so heavy! I can't carry them.



I'd like to live in one of **those** big town houses.



Those sunglasses look great on you!



I like the look of **those** Caribbean cruises.



I'll take **those** apples and **these** bananas, please.



65.3 “THIS” 和 “THAT” 作代词

“this” 和 “that” 在句子中可以替代单数名词，用于特指某个事物。“this” 指代距离较近的事物，“that” 指代距离较远的事物。



This is my dog.

这条狗在近处。



That is my dog.

这条狗在远处。



“this” 还可以指代现场的事物或最近发生的事情；“that” 可以指代不在场的事物或过去发生的事情。



This is a great party.

“this” 说明派对正在进行。



That was such a fun party yesterday.

“that” 说明派对是过去举办的。

更多例证

This is a great honor. Thank you everyone for coming.



That was so exciting.



This has always been the most beautiful park.



If you could do a blow-dry, **that** would be great.



This is the perfect laptop for creative work.



That sounded out of tune. I'd get the piano fixed.



This is the best soup I've ever tasted.



That looks great. Is the car new?



65.4 “THESE” 和 “THOSE” 作代词

“these” 和 “those” 在句子中可以替代复数名词。“these” 指代距离较近的事物或刚刚发生的事情，“those” 指代距离较远的事物或过去发生的事情。



This is my bag.



That is my bag.



“these” 是 “this” 的复数形式。



These are my bags.

“those” 是 “that” 的复数形式。



Those are my bags.



“these” 和 “those” 还可以用来作对比。其中 “these” 所指代的事物属于一个人。



These are my bags and **those** are your bags.

“those” 所指代的事物属于另一个人。



更多例证

These are the best kind of shoes to wear when running.



I think **those** will probably taste better with sauce.



These are the only clothes I own.



Those aren't very good for you. Try **these** instead.



65.5 用 “THAT” 或 “THOSE” 替代

“that” 和 “those” 可以替代名词短语，意思是 “那个” 或 “那些”。

“that” 替代 “policy”。

The new policy is better than **that** of before.



“those who” 等同于 “people who”。

I disapprove of **those** who don't recycle.



“no” 和 “none” 都是指缺少某事物或没有某事物。“no” 常和名词连用，“none” 在句子中可以替代名词。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

可数名词和不可数名词 70

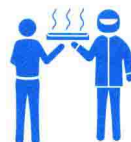
66.1 “NO”

“no” 只能与不可数名词或复数名词一起使用。

不可数名词。

There was **no** time to cook a meal.

[没有时间做饭。]



复数名词。

I have **no** ingredients in my kitchen.

[厨房里没有调料。]



更多例证

This menu has **no** vegetarian options.



I would have booked a restaurant but there were **no** tables.



No waiters were available to take our order.



There are **no** recipes in this book that I haven't tried.



66.2 “NO” 加名词表示强调

在这个语境中，尽管 “no” 和 “not any” 意思一样，但是 “no” 通常更具强调意味。

There wasn't **any** food left.

There was **no** food left!

这种用法可以表达惊讶或失望。



66.3 “NONE”

“none”可以代替“no”加名词，表示缺少某事物。

“left”表明过去有一些披萨。

I wanted some pizza, but there was **none** left.

[我想要一些披萨，但没有披萨了。]

“none of”用在代词或带有限定词的名词之前。

None of the pizza was left.



“none”还可以单独使用，回答对数量的提问。

How much pizza is there?



None.



更多例证

I wanted the soup, but there was **none** left.



I would have bought balloons, but there were **none** in the shop.



I love this suit, but there are **none** here in my size.



None of the people eating at the restaurant enjoyed their food.



I offered my friends some chocolate, but they wanted **none of** it.



This restaurant has **none of** the food that I like.



“none”和“none of”比“not any”更具强调意味。

“each / every”

“each”和“every”用在单数名词之前，指代一组事物或一群人中的所有个体。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69

67.1 “EACH”和“EVERY”

大多数情况下，“each”和“every”的意思没有差别。

I buy more and more { each
every } time I go shopping.



指每一次。

{ Each
Every } place we stopped at was beautiful.



指所有的地方。

更多例证

The host made sure he greeted **each** guest at the party.



Last summer I went to visit my grandmother **every** day.



Each person on the beach was developing a bad sunburn.



I always try **every** kind of ice cream when I go abroad.



⚠ 常见错误 “EACH”和“EVERY”

与“each”不同，若某事物只有两个，则不能用“every”修饰。

She had an earring in **each** ear. ✓

She had an earring in **every** ear. ✗

她只有两只耳朵，所以不能用“every”。



67.2 “EACH”

“each” 用于表示一组事物中每个单独的个体。



You must check **each** answer carefully.

“each” 还用于表示较少的数量。



Each pencil is a different color.

更多例证

I get more awake after **each** cup of coffee.



I took lots of time over **each** application I made.



Each player on my team contributed to our win.



Each friend who visited me brought a gift.



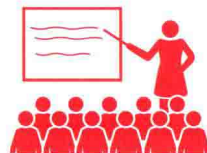
67.3 “EVERY”

“every” 用于表示一组事物的整体。



I want to eat **every** piece of this delicious pie.

“every” 还用于表示较多的数量。



Every child has the right to an education.

更多例证

Every night I look up at all the stars in the sky.



My colleague says he's visited **every** country in the world.



Every fan in the stadium was cheering loudly.



I can't remember **every** hotel I've ever stayed in.



“either / neither / both”

“either” “neither” 和 “both” 都用于表示 “两者……”，意思分别为：“两者中的任意一个……” “两者都不……” 和 “两者都……”。

参见：

冠词 63 单数名词和复数名词 69
人称代词 77

68.1 “EITHER” “NEITHER” 和 “BOTH”

“either” 意为两者中的“一个或另一个”，应当用在单数名词之前。

You could enter **either** tournament.

说明有两种比赛。



“neither” 意为两者“都不”，应当用在单数名词前。与含有“either”的否定句表示的意义相同。

Neither event is being shown on TV.

单数名词。

[两项活动都没在电视上播出。]



“both” 意为“两者都”，应当用在复数名词前或表示复数意义的代词前。

I ran in **both** [the] races.

“both” 后面可以添加 “the” “these” 或 “my” 这类限定词。

I ran in **them** **both**.

表示复数意义的代词可以放在 “both” 之前。



另外一种用法

当上下文意思清楚时，“either” “neither” 和 “both” 可以单独使用。



Would you like potatoes or salad with your steak?

Either.



Neither.



Both.



68.2 “NEITHER OF” “EITHER OF” 和 “BOTH OF”

“either of” “neither of” 和 “both of” 用在表示复数意义的代词之前，或用在限定词加复数名词之前。

I could buy **either of** these bicycles,
but I don't really need **either of** them.

“bicycles” 是复数名词。



“them” 是表示复数意义的代词。

We won **neither of** the races.
Neither of us trained hard enough.



当用在限定词加名词之前时，“of” 可加也可不加。

We train with **both (of)** our coaches.
They are proud of **both of** us.



表示复数意义的人称代词 “us” “you” 和 “them” 可以和 “either of” “neither of” 以及 “both of” 连用，既可作主语也可作宾语。

I danced with **both of** **them**.

“them” 作宾语。



Neither of **you** can dance.

“you” 作主语。



更多例证

I wasn't able to get tickets
for **either of** the first heats.



Neither of the athletes
are very fit.



I'm going to watch **both** the
equestrian events later today.



Either of **them** could win the
contest. It's hard to call.



We thought **neither of** **them**
would be able to finish.



Both of **you** are strong
contenders. You deserve to win.



68.3 “EITHER... OR” “NEITHER... NOR” 和 “BOTH... AND”

“either... or” 和 “neither... nor” 用于两者之间的对比，对比对象常常是名词短语、介词短语或从句。

I want **either** the cake **or** the cookie.



Neither the cake **nor** the cookie tasted good.



“nor” 只能和 “neither” 连用。 “neither” 要和肯定形式的动词连用。

“either... or” 和 “neither... nor” 可以用于有两个或两个以上备选项的情况。

前两个选项之间用逗号隔开。

I want to play **either** tennis, badminton, **or** squash.



Neither basketball, golf, **nor** hockey are the sports for me.



“both... and” 是 “neither... nor” 的反义词，但只能用于仅有两个备选项的情况。

I want **both** the cake **and** the cookie.



更多例证

We'll meet up on **either** Tuesday **or** Wednesday.



I'm going to play **either** tennis, basketball, **or** hockey tonight.



My teacher told me I could **neither** paint **nor** draw.



Neither sports **nor** exercise interest me.



I invited **both** my grandmother **and** my uncle.



I went to **both** the bakery **and** the butcher shop.



68.4 “EITHER... OR” 和 “NEITHER... NOR” 中的主谓一致

当使用 “either... or” 或 “neither... nor” 连接两个名词时，后面的动词形式一般要与第二个名词保持一致。

动词形式与第二个名词
即单数名词一致。

Either a tablet or a **laptop is** needed for the course.



动词形式与第二个名词
即复数名词一致。

Neither the teacher nor the **children were** happy.



如果第二个名词是单数，第一个名词是复数，那么动词既可以用单数也可以用复数。

Neither the **classrooms** nor the **office** { **has** / **have** } internet access.

动词既可以用单数
也可以用复数。



更多例证

Either a loan or a **grant is** available for financial help.



Neither the swimming pool nor the **gym is** open on Sundays.



I hope either sandwiches or **soup is** on the menu today.



Neither a shirt nor a **tie is** compulsory at school.



Either my brother or my **grandparents are** coming.



Neither the bread nor the **cakes are** ready yet.



Either pens or **pencils are** suitable to use in the exam.



Neither calculators nor **study notes are** allowed in the exam.



英语的名词没有阴性阳性之分，但有单复数之分。单数名词指数量是一的名词，复数名词指数量大于等于二的名词。

参见：
形容词 92 冠词 63
不规则的复数形式 R24

69.1 普通名词

普通名词之前常加冠词。
名词由形容词来修饰。



car



banana



skirt



game



idea



thought

69.2 专有名词

表示人名、地名、日期、月份的名词被称为专有名词，这类名词的首字母要大写。



Egypt is a beautiful country.

埃及是个国家名，所以首字母大写。

“country” 是普通名词。

更多例证

I study at **Southern University**.



My best friend is called **Jasmine**.



I can see **Mars** in the sky tonight.



I was born in **Canada**.



The **Titanic** sank when it hit an iceberg.



I hope to someday win an **Oscar**.



69.3 复数名词的拼写规则

大多数名词变复数是在单数名词后加“-s”。



book



books



toy



toys



不规则的复数形式

以“-s”“-x”“-z”“-ch”“-sh”结尾的名词变复数时，在词尾加“-es”。

watch



watches

brush



brushes

box



boxes

bus



buses

quiz



quizzes

当单词最后一个字母是“-z”时，变复数要双写“z”再加“-es”。

“man”和“woman”，以及相应的职业名称的复数形式都是不规则的。

man



men

woman



women

businessman



businessmen

businesswoman



businesswomen

以辅音字母加“-y”结尾的名词变复数时，去掉“-y”加“-ies”。

dictionary



dictionaries

story



stories

另外，还有一些名词变复数没有规则可循，需要翻阅权威词典进行确定。

child



children

person



people

以“-o”结尾的名词变复数时，常常是在词尾加“-es”。如果结尾是元音加“-o”，变复数时直接加“-s”。

echo



echoes

radio



radios

一些名词单复数同形。

species



species

sheep



sheep

英语的名词可以分为可数和不可数两类。可数名词可以一个一个计数；不可数名词不可以计数。

参见：

一般现在时否定句 2 疑问句的构成 34
数词 74 量词 75

70.1 可数名词和不可数名词

“a” “an” 或数量词可以修饰可数名词。“some” 既可以修饰可数名词也可以修饰不可数名词。

可数名词

There is **an** egg. ●

There are **four** eggs. ●●●●

There are **some** eggs. 

不可数名词

不可数名词只能和单数动词连用。

There is **some** rice. 

不可数名词只能用“some”修饰，不能用“a” “an” 或数量词修饰。

更多例证



a sandwich



an apple



some bananas



two burgers



some milk



some water



some spaghetti



some sugar

70.2 使不可数名词变得可数

当不可数名词所表示的事物被装在容器内时，就变成了可数。



some sugar



a bag of sugar



some water



three bottles of water



some cereal



a bowl of cereal

70.3 否定句

不管是可数名词还是不可数名词，在否定句和疑问句中都要用“any”修饰。

可数名词

There are **some** eggs.

There aren't **any** eggs.

动词用复数形式。

Are there **any** eggs?

动词用复数形式。

不可数名词

There is **some** rice.

There isn't **any** rice.

动词用单数形式。

Is there **any** rice?

动词用单数形式。

70.4 对数量提问

对可数名词的数量进行提问时，用“many”；对不可数名词的数量进行提问时，用“much”。


How **many** eggs are there? 

动词用复数形式。

How **much** rice is there? 

动词用单数形式。

更多例证

How **many** cupcakes are there? 

How **many** apples are there? 

How **much** cheese is there? 

How **much** chocolate is there? 

⚠ 常见错误 “MUCH” 和 “MANY”

“much” 只能修饰不可数名词，句中的动词必须用单数形式。

How **much** pasta is there? 

How **many** pasta are there? 

71 主谓一致

主语和谓语动词单复数一致是英语的一条基本原则。但是根据不同语境，一些主语有时可以看作单数，有时可以看作复数。

参见：

一般现在时 1

单数名词和复数名词 69

71.1 复数名词搭配单数谓语动词的情况

以复数名词结尾的书名或其他作品名要搭配使用单数谓语动词。

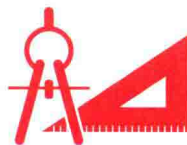
尽管“tales”是复数，但*The Canterbury Tales* 是一部文学作品的名称，是单数。

***The Canterbury Tales* was**
first published in the 1400s.



还有一些名词以“-s”结尾，看似复数但仍要搭配单数谓语动词。很多地名和学科名称都属于这一类。

Mathematics is becoming
a more popular subject.



更多例证



***Little Women* is** a novel by
Louisa May Alcott.



The Netherlands is famous
for its tulip industry.



Gymnastics was the most
enjoyable sport at school.



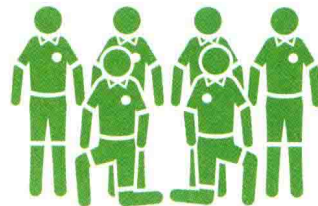
Politics is often a topic for
academic debate.



Athletics was an important part
of the ancient Olympic Games.

71.2 集合名词

集合名词在形式上是单数，但所表示的是以集体形式出现的多个人或物。在美式英语中，常将其与单数动词搭配；在英式英语中，往往既可以视作单数，也可以视作复数。



如果主语表示的是单个整体，动词只能用单数形式。

The **team** **is** getting a new manager next year.

[作为一个整体，这个团队将要迎来新经理。]

主语表示的是整体中的每个个体。

仅限于英式英语。

The **team** **are** feeling excited about the news.

[队伍中的每一个成员都很兴奋。]

更多例证

The **society** **is** going to have a meeting next week.



The **society** **are** discussing how often they should meet.

The **band** **has** just released its new album.



The **band** **have** been on tour to promote their new album.

The **government** **is** located in the capital city.



The **government** **are** in talks with the US.

My **family** **is** bigger than most other families I know.



My **family** **are** going away together for the first time in years.

The **company** **has** hired some new staff.



The **company** **have** been busy baking for a charity cake sale.

大多数抽象名词都是不可数名词，但是也有少数既可以作为可数名词也可以作为不可数名词，两者在意思上有细微差别。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69
可数名词和不可数名词 70

72.1 抽象名词和具体名词

抽象名词表示的是没有具体形态的事物，如想法、事件、概念、感受和质量。具体名词是指可以看到、摸到、听到或闻到的事物。

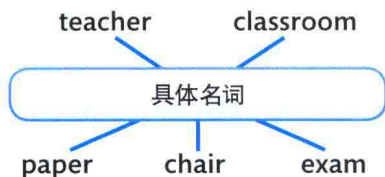


He has a lot of **books**, but not much **knowledge**.

“books” 是可数的具体名词。

“knowledge” 是不可数的抽象名词。

更多例证



更多例证



I can't wait to prepare for this **dinner party**.



I'm going to get my **car** fixed sometime soon.



I'm having **difficulty** logging on to my computer.



I need to come up with better **ideas** to keep my boss happy.

72.2 可数和不可数抽象名词

一些抽象名词既有可数形式，也有不可数形式。两种形式意思有细微差别，其中可数形式指称更加具体，不可数形式指称更加笼统。

可数

I've been there a few **times**.

每一个“time”都表示一个特定的场合。

He has had many **successes**.

“successes”表示特定的成就。

It has some great **qualities**.

“qualities”表示具体的特性。

We learned several new **skills**.

学到了特定的技能。

I've had some **thoughts** about it.

有几个特定的想法。

This city has a great mix of **cultures**.

这里指的是几种不同类型的文化。

There's a range of **abilities** in class.

“abilities”表示多种不同的技能水平。



不可数

There's plenty of **time** left.

“time”是指一般概念上的时间。

Hard work leads to **success**.

“success”是指一般意义上的成就。

It has a reputation for **quality**.

“quality”是指一种较高的标准。

It takes **skill** to do that job.

“skill”是指做某事所需的一般技能。

The task requires **thought**.

“thought”是指思考的过程。

The museum is filled with **culture**.

“culture”是指承载文化和历史的事物。

She has great **ability** in writing.

“ability”是指一般意义上的技能。

73 复合名词

复合名词是指两个或多个名词构成的整体。在这个整体中，前面的名词与形容词作用类似，修饰后面的名词。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69
形容词 92

73.1 复合名词

两个名词可以组合使用，表示单个事物。

乒乓球是一种在桌子上打的网球。

On Tuesdays I play **table tennis**.



第一个名词即使表达复数意义，通常也要使用单数形式。

图画书是关于各种图画的书，但是“picture”依旧使用单数形式。

My baby sister loves her **picture book**.



有时第一个名词也可以是复数形式。

My brother always plays on his **games console**.

“games”是复数形式。



复合名词的书写没有规则。一些复合名词写成两个独立的单词，一些连在一起写成一个单词，还有一些在两个单词之间加连字号。



toothbrush



bus stop



six-pack

连字号。

更多例证



The meeting is in the **town hall**.



I buy tickets at the **ticket office**.



I eat dinner at the **kitchen table**.



We were in a **cycle race**.



I'm having my 44th **birthday party**.



I've always wanted a **sailboat**.

73.2 较长的复合名词

一个名词前可以加两个或多个起修饰作用的名词。这种结构常用于报纸文章标题，好处是可以节省篇幅。

I came first in the **table tennis tournament**.



Bank robbery ringleader capture confirmed.



意为“银行劫案的罪魁祸首被捕 (the capture of the ringleader of the bank robbery)”这件事已经被确认。

73.3 复数复合名词

复合名词变复数时，把最后一个单词变成复数即可。

The **summer party** was fun.



Summer parties are always fun.

“party” 变为 “parties”。

更多例证



Restaurant chains are reliable when you need a quick meal.



I have a collection of **teapots**.



I organize my **bookcases** when they start to look messy.



I spend a lot of time waiting at **bus stops**.

74 数词

基数词用于计算和表示某事物的数目。序数词用于表示某事物在有序列表中的位置。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

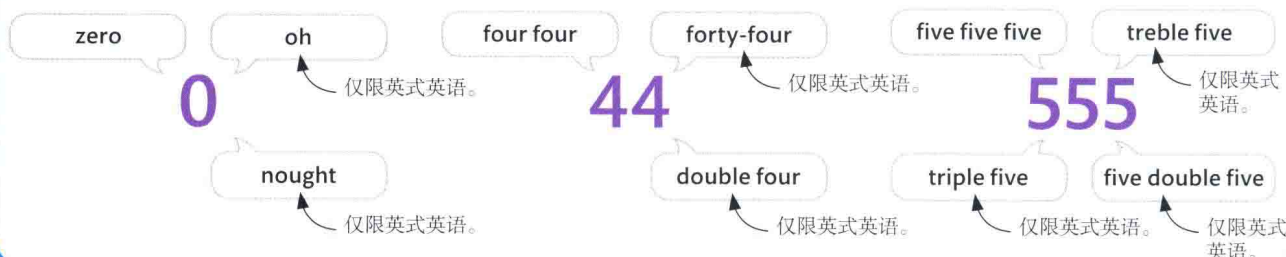
量词 75 表示近似数量的词语 76

74.1 基数词

1 one	2 two	3 three	4 four	5 five	6 six
7 seven	8 eight	9 nine	10 ten	11 eleven	12 twelve
13 thirteen	14 fourteen	15 fifteen	16 sixteen	17 seventeen	18 eighteen
19 nineteen	20 twenty	21 twenty-one	22 twenty-two	30 thirty	40 forty
50 fifty	60 sixty	70 seventy	80 eighty	90 ninety	100 one hundred

74.2 数字的读法

“0”在美式英语中读作“zero”，但在英式英语中有其他读法。在美式英语中，重复的数字（如：电话号码中相邻的重复数字）会逐个读出，但英式英语中有其他读法。



74.3 较大的数字

100可以读作“one hundred”或“a hundred”。二者均正确。“hundred”“thousand”或“million”之后不要加“-s”。

100

one hundred

a hundred

101

one hundred and one

200

two hundred

词尾不加“-s”。

1,000

one thousand

a thousand

1,200

one thousand, two hundred

3,000

three thousand

1,000,000

one million

a million

1,300,000

one million, three hundred thousand

40,000,000

forty million

较长的数字要用逗号隔断。

更多例证

在英式英语中，读大于100的数字时，要在最后两位数字之前加“and”；但在美式英语中，这种读法被看作是不正式的。

2,876

two thousand, eight hundred and seventy-six

“seventy-six”之前加“and”。

54,041

fifty-four thousand and forty-one

100,922

one hundred thousand, nine hundred and twenty-two

296,308

two hundred and ninety-six thousand, three hundred and eight

为了方便区分，要在十亿位、百万位和千位之后加逗号。

1,098,283

one million, ninety-eight thousand, two hundred and eighty-three

74.4 读音相近的数字

在读发音相近的数字时，要读准重读音节，避免混淆。

重读最后一个音节。

13 thirteen

重读第一个音节。

30 thirty

14 fourteen

40 forty

15 fifteen

50 fifty

16 sixteen

60 sixty

17 seventeen

70 seventy

18 eighteen

80 eighty

19 nineteen

90 ninety

74.5 序数词

1st

first

2nd

second

3rd

third

4th

fourth

5th

fifth

6th

sixth

7th

seventh

8th

eighth

9th

ninth

10th

tenth

11th

eleventh

12th

twelfth

13th

thirteenth

14th

fourteenth

15th

fifteenth

16th

sixteenth

17th

seventeenth

18th

eighteenth

19th

nineteenth

20th

twentieth

21st

twenty-first

22nd

twenty-second

30th

thirtieth

40th

fortieth

50th

fiftieth

60th

sixtieth

70th

seventieth

80th

eightieth

90th

ninetieth

100th

one-hundredth

74.6 日期

涉及日期时，美国人一般写基数词，但读序数词。英国人读日期和写日期都用序数词。

美式英语中，数字写在月份之后。

His birthday is on



May 18 (US)

May the 18th (UK)

the 18th of May (UK)

May eighteenth

May the eighteenth

the eighteenth of May

74.7 分数

分数可以用单词拼写。“half”亦即1/2,“quarter”亦即1/4;分母要用序数词书写,也要用序数词朗读。

$\frac{1}{4}$

a quarter

分母用序数词。

$\frac{1}{3}$

a third

$\frac{1}{2}$

a half

分子用基数词。

$\frac{3}{5}$

three fifths

$1\frac{1}{2}$

one and a half

整数与分数之间用“and”连接。

74.8 小数

小数一般用数字书写,不用单词书写。小数点读作“point”,小数点后的所有数字都要一个一个单独读出。

整数部分是“0”的小数有三种读法。

point five

0.5

nought point five

zero point five

仅限英式英语。

1.7

one point seven

小数点与英语的句号相同,是个实心点。

3.97

three point nine seven

不能读作“three point ninety-seven”。

74.9 百分数

百分号%读作“percent”,也写作“per cent”(英式英语中写作“per cent”);一般情况下,百分比要用数字书写,不用单词书写。

1%

one percent

99%

ninety-nine percent

55.5%

fifty-five point five percent

12%

twelve per cent

70%

seventy per cent

100%

one hundred per cent

75 量词

英语中有很多表达一般数量和特定数量的方式，比如：数量充足与否，不同数量之间对比情况如何。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

可数名词和不可数名词 70

75.1 表示数量的短语

当具体数量不详时，英语中有多种表示数量的短语。

当数量大于一，但确切数量不详时，用 “some”。

There are **some** buildings.



数量不多时，用 “a few”。

There are **a few** buildings.



数量较多时，用 “lots of”。

There are **lots of** buildings.



更多例证

There are **some** very old trees in my local park.



There are **a few** items on the menu that I'd like to try.



There are **a few** sights that I'd like to see while I'm here.



There are **lots of** mountains in the Alps that I'd love to climb.



There are **some** vegetables that I really don't like.



There are **a few** cars parked outside my house.



Lots of my friends rely on trains to get to work.



There are **lots of** people waiting outside the gallery.



75.2 “ENOUGH / TOO MANY” 修饰可数名词

“enough” “not enough” 和 “too many” 用于表述可数名词的数量，被表述对象一般是很容易计数的事物。



We have two eggs. That's **not enough**.

数量太少。



We need four eggs.
Do we have **enough**?

We have four eggs. That's **enough**.

数量刚好。



Don't use five eggs. That's **too many**.

数量绰绰有余。



在疑问句中，使用 “enough”。

更多例证

There are **enough** apples here.

I **don't** have **enough** shoes.

There **aren't** **enough** employees.

You have **too many** clothes.

75.3 “ENOUGH / TOO MUCH” 修饰不可数名词

“enough” “not enough” 和 “too much” 用于表述不可数名词的数量。被表述对象一般是不能容易计数的事物。



We need eight ounces of flour. Do we have **enough**?



not enough flour

数量太少。



enough flour

数量刚好。



too much flour

数量绰绰有余。

更多例证

There is **enough** milk.

There **isn't** **enough** time.

I **don't** have **enough** energy.

There is **too much** food.

75.4 “A LOT OF” 和 “LOTS OF”

“a lot of” 和 “lots of” 常用在不可数名词和可数名词复数之前，适用于非正式语境，用以表明某事物的数量很多。

A lot of
Lots of } people play sports to keep fit.



更多例证

There was **a lot of** food at the event.



The charity received **lots of** donations.



The event raised **a lot of** money.



Lots of people enjoy charity events.



75.5 “LITTLE” 表示数量较少

在英式英语中，“little” 用在不可数名词前，意为某事物的数量较少。该词强调数量之少。

little = not much

I have **little** money left. I can't afford to visit the wildlife park.



“little” 还可用作代词，意为“不多（not much）”。

Little can be done about the decreasing number of red squirrels.



“a little” 用在不可数名词之前，意为“有一些（some）”。该词强调的是数量虽然不多，但是足够使用。

a little = some

I have **a little** money left. Should we visit the wildlife park?



在非正式语境中，“a (little) bit of” 可替代 “a little”。

There's **a little bit of** the park that we haven't seen yet.



75.6 “FEW” 表示数量较少

“few” 用在可数名词复数前，意为某事物的数量不多。该词强调数量之少。

few = not many

There are **few** rare birds here.
We probably won't see any.

“a few” 用在可数名词复数前，意为“有一些 (some)”。该词强调的是数量虽然不多，但是足够使用。

a few = some

There are **a few** rare birds here.
We might see one.

更多例证

“few” 还可用作代词，意为“不多 (not much)”。

Few are willing to contribute to the upkeep of the national park.



可以用“very”来强调某事物的数量很少。



I wanted to see an owl, but **very few** can be seen during the day.

75.7 “QUITE A FEW” 和 “QUITE A BIT (OF)” 表示较大数量

词组 “quite a bit of” 和 “quite a few” 是 “a lot of” 或 “many” 的低调陈述。

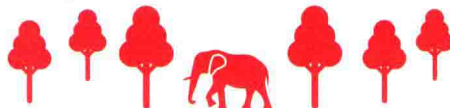
quite a few = many

The park is home to **quite a few** species.



quite a bit of = a lot of

There is **quite a bit of** open space for the animals.



更多例证

Quite a few of the students in my class don't like History.



There are **quite a few** books that I'd like to read.



There's still **quite a bit of** snow on the ground.



She ate **quite a bit of** cake at her birthday party.



75.8 “MORE”

“more” 用于表示有更多数量的某事物。既可以修饰可数名词，也可以修饰不可数名词。

I'm buying **more** cookies.

“cookies” 是可数名词。



We need **more** milk.

“milk” 是不可数名词。



更多例证

I like spending **more** time with my family.

Our new house has **more** space.

We raised **even more** money for charity.

可以加上 “even”，表示强调。

More and more people are donating.

“more and more” 表示数量随时间增加而增长。

75.9 “FEWER” 和 “LESS”

“fewer” 和 “less” 用于表示有更少数量的某事物。“fewer” 用于修饰复数可数名词，“less” 用于修饰不可数名词。

Fewer people drive cars these days.

“people” 是复数可数名词。



Traveling by bus or train uses **less** fuel.



“fuel” 是不可数名词。

更多例证

There are **fewer** whales in the oceans nowadays.



We need to spend **less** money.



Fewer people enjoy gardening these days.




There is much **less** traffic today.



❗ 常见错误 “FEWER” 和 “LESS”

使用 “fewer” 和 “less” 时，要注意修饰的名词是否可数。

“fewer” 只适用于复数可数名词。
 I have **fewer** potatoes than I need. ✓

“less” 只适用于不可数名词。
I have **less** potatoes than I need. ✗

I have **fewer** flour than the recipe requires. ✗

I have **less** flour than I need. ✓ 

75.10 “MORE THAN” “LESS THAN” 和 “FEWER THAN”

“more than” 用于表述可数和不可数名词的数量。

Lions eat **more than** 15 pounds of meat each day.



“fewer than” 用于表述一组人或物的数量。

There are **fewer than** 3,500 tigers in the wild.



“less than” 用于表述数量、距离、时间和金钱。

The wildlife park costs **less than** \$5 to visit.



更多例证

The committee holds meetings **more than** 5 times a month.



The charity survives with **fewer than** 20 volunteers.



There were **more than** 100 people at the event.



There are **fewer than** 50 tickets left for the charity concert.



Charity workers are paid on average **less than** \$10 an hour.



You can donate **less than** the recommended amount.



如果知道具体数据，最好将其列出。在具体数据不详或想要避免重复的情况下，则需要更具概括性的词语进行表述。

参见：

单数名词和复数名词 69

数词 74 “as... as” 表示比较 96

76.1 表示近似数量的短语

在确切数量不详或没必要给出时，英语会用特定的表示数量的短语对相应数量进行表达。



3 out of 15 students live off campus.



In some cases, students live off campus.

“some” 所表示的数量非常不具体。在例句中，“some” 除了一个没有、1个、15个这三个数量外，其他数量的意义都能涵盖。

提示

“minority” 和 “majority” 常常由其他词语进行限定，如 “small minority” 或 “vast majority”。

更多例证



少数 (minority) 指数量少于一半，但常常表示数量远远少于一半。

In a minority of cases,

In a few cases,

employers provide funding for education.



“most” 和 “majority” 指数量多于一半。

In most cases,

In the majority of cases,

students can contact their professors online.



这类表示不确切数量的短语既可以表示多数 (majority) 的情况，也可以表示少数 (minority) 的情况。

In some cases,

In a number of cases,

students can live in dorms on campus.

76.2 表示近似数值的词

通过使用“approximately”“about”“just”“well”以及“almost”修饰数值，数值可以变得更具“泛指”意义。



Approximately
About } half of the students are from Europe.

表示数量不确切。



Just under a third of the assessment consists of coursework.

表示差额很小。



Well over 50 percent of the course is online.

表示差额很大。



Almost all of the lessons are one hour long.

表示实际数量略少。

76.3 令人惊讶的数字

一些表达可用于描述特定的数值或数量令人惊讶。



Other universities charge **as much as** €100 for this service.

表示€100 的数额很大，大到让人惊讶。



For **as little as** \$5 per semester, you can join the club.

表示\$5 的数额很小，小到让人惊讶。



There are **as many as** 25 free student events each month.

表示25 起事件很多，多到让人惊讶。



The library is generally closed for **as few as** 2 days a month.

表示两天很少，少到让人惊讶。

人称代词在句中用于替代名词。它既可以指代人也可以指代物，既可以作主语也可以作宾语，作主语时的形式和作宾语时的形式有所不同。

参见：
及物动词搭配 53
所有格 80 缩略形式 R13

77.1 主格代词

主格代词在句中替代主语。主要用于避免重复或替代不知道的名字。英语的代词没有正式与非正式之分。



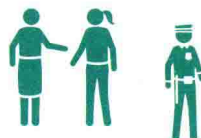
Who's **he**?

因为说话者不知道那个人的名字，所以使用主格代词“he”。

动词“be”和“have”常常和主格代词缩略。

That's Andy. **He's** a policeman.

“he”是指Andy，这里是为了避免重复。



语法剖析

主格代词的使用取决于所指代的名词的数量以及所指代的名词的人称（第一人称、第二人称、第三人称）。

	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单数	I	you	he she it
复数	we	you	they

更多例证

I'm turning 25 next week.



You are a great actor.



He likes driving fast.



Stuart and I are going climbing.



They complain every time.



You make a great team.



77.2 宾格代词

宾格代词在句中替代宾语。多数宾格代词与其相对应的主格代词形式不同。


“Lizzy” 是宾语。

Animals love Lizzy.

↓

Animals love **her**.

用 “her” 替代 “Lizzy”。



不管在句中作直接宾语还是间接宾语，宾格代词的形式都一样。

“her” 是间接宾语。

I gave **her** the puppy.

↓

The puppy loves **her**.

“her” 是直接宾语。



提示

不管指代单数还是复数，不管作宾语还是主语，“you” 的形式都不变。

语法剖析

主语						
I	we	you	he	she	it	they
↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓	↓
me	us	you	him	her	it	them
宾语						

更多例证

I want to tell **you** that I'm sorry.



可以使用 “all” 来表示 “you” 所指代的是复数。

Sam invited **you** all to the party.



Dave asked **me** to go with **him**.



We're sad that **he** won't come with **us**.



It was a very difficult time for **them**.



Georgia wanted **it** for Christmas.



78 反身代词

反身代词用以表示句中动词的主语和宾语是一致的。
除此之外，还可以用来表示强调。

参见：
及物动词搭配 53
人称代词 77

78.1 反身代词

英语的反身代词是在一般代词的基础上添加后缀“-self”或“-selves”构成的。

主格代词指代动作的发出者。

当动作的承受者和动作的发出者一致时，用反身代词进行指代。



He cut **himself** while chopping vegetables.

语法剖析

宾格代词	反身代词
me	myself
you	yourself
这是“yourself”的复数形式。	
you	yourselves
her	herself
him	himself
it	itself
us	ourselves
them	themselves

更多例证

I left **myself** a reminder about the meeting.



You must prepare **yourselves** for this exam.



Sarah sees **herself** as a natural team leader.



He introduced **himself** to the other guests.



The door locks **itself** when you close it.



We pride **ourselves** on our customer service.



They're teaching **themselves** to cook.



78.2 不能接反身代词的动词

有些动词在其他语言中可以接反身代词，但在英语中一般不能接反身代词。

动词“relax”之后不能接反身代词。

I'm really stressed. I can't **relax**. ✓



I'm really stressed. I can't relax myself. ✗

错误。

更多例证



I'll turn my music down if you can't **concentrate**.



He **shaves** every morning.



He was sick, but he's **feeling** better now.



She **goes to bed** at the same time every night.



Let's **meet** at the café at 2:30.



She **washes her hair** every evening.



I **get up** early every day.



I often **hurry** out of the house.

⚠ 常见错误 反身代词

只有句子的主语和宾语一致时才能用反身代词。如果宾语和主语不一致，就需要使用宾格代词。

句子的主语是“my boss”，所以使用宾格代词是对的。

My boss invited Joe and **me** to the meeting. ✓

My boss invited **myself** and Joe to the meeting. ✗

句子的主语不是“I”，所以使用反身代词是错的。

78.3 用反身代词表示强调

有时从语法层面来说无须使用反身代词，但为了表示强调依然可以使用反身代词。



The company director gave the talk.

不用反身代词，这个句子也可以讲得通。

在句末加上反身代词，目的是强调这个动作的发出者是他本人。

The company director gave the talk **himself**.

[讲话的人是公司的董事长，不是别人。]

主语后紧接反身代词，用来强调其重要性。

The company director **himself** gave the talk.

[讲话的人是公司里的重要人物——董事长。]

更多例证



You don't have to do the dishes. I'll do them **myself**.



She's fixing her car **herself**. It's cheaper than taking it to the garage.



The meal **itself** wasn't very good, but it was a great evening.



The board members **themselves** will be at the meeting today.



I do my laundry **myself**, but my dad does my sister's for her.



I wanted us to build the furniture **ourselves**, but it's not going well.

78.4 反身代词搭配

很多固定搭配中含有反身代词。这些搭配遵循的规则一般是动词加反身代词加介词。



She still has to **familiarize herself with** company policy.

更多例证



Are you leaving early today? **Enjoy yourself!**



The managers don't **concern themselves with** minor issues.



Remember to **behave yourselves** when you are in public.



Try to **tear yourself away from** the computer as often as possible.



He was **sitting by himself** in the café.

“by”与反身代词连用时，意思是“独自一人”。

反身代词常常用在祈使句中。这里的“yourself”表明“you”是主语。

提示

有时句子里没有主语，但通过反身代词可以推断出主语。

78.5 “EACH OTHER”

当两个或多个个人或物互相发出相同的动作时，不用反身代词，要用“each other”。

Amy and Raj looked at **each other**.

[Amy看Raj, Raj也看Amy。]



Amy and Raj looked at **themselves** in the mirror.

[Amy在镜子里看自己, Raj也在镜子里看自己。]



更多例证

They gave **each other** presents.

My cats hate **each other**!

“one another”和“each other”意思一样。

The children are shouting at **one another**.

We're helping **each other** with our homework.

79 不定代词

不定代词，如：“anyone” “someone” 和 “everyone”，用于指代某个人或物，或者一群人、一组事物，但不指明具体是什么人、什么物。

参见：
一般现在时 1
疑问句的构成 34

79.1 “ANYONE” 和 “SOMEONE”

在肯定陈述句或疑问句中，用 “someone” 和 “somebody” 指代不确定的人；
在疑问句和否定陈述句中，用 “anyone” 和 “anybody” 指代不确定的人。



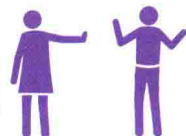
Did **anyone** call me this morning?

Yes, **someone** called you at 11 o'clock.



Do you want to talk to **somebody**?

No, I don't want to talk to **anybody**.



“somebody” 与 “someone” 意思一样，但不如 “someone” 正式。

“anybody” 和 “anyone” 意思一样，但不如 “anyone” 正式。

更多例证

Is **someone** working late?



I didn't give **anybody** your name.



Can **somebody** carry my bag?



Did **anyone** buy a gift for Mrs. Tan?



I gave **somebody** a flower.



I don't know **anyone** in this town.



Someone gave me a present.



Did **anybody** here send me this letter?

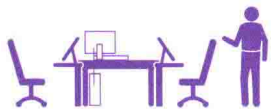


79.2 “EVERYONE” 和 “NO ONE”

“everyone” 指 “一群人中的每一个人都……”；
“no one” 指 “一群人中的每一个人都……”。

“no one” 分开写作两个单词。

Why is there **no one** in the office?



Everyone is at the big meeting.

“everyone” 和 “everybody” 后接动词单数形式。



“everybody” 和 “everyone” 的意思一样，但不如 “everyone” 正式。



Where is **everybody**?

I don't know, there's **nobody** here.

“nobody” 和 “no one” 与

“nobody” 和 “no one” 意思一样。



更多例证

Nobody wants to come with me.



I'm at the park with **everyone** if you'd like to join us.



Everybody has some kind of special skill.



There was **nobody** but me at work until 10am.



⚠ 常见错误 “NO ONE” 和 “ANYONE”

“no one” 和 “nobody” 用于肯定陈述句和疑问句。“anyone” 和 “anybody” 用于否定陈述句和疑问句。

该句为否定陈述句，所以用 “anyone” 或 “anybody”。

There isn't **anyone** here. ✓

There isn't **no one** here. ✗

该句为否定陈述句，所以用 “no one” 是错的。

79.3 “SOMETHING” 和 “ANYTHING”

“something” 和 “anything” 用于指代不确定或未命名的事物。“something” 只能用于疑问句和肯定陈述句；“anything” 既可以用于否定陈述句，也可以用于疑问句和肯定陈述句。

在该句中，“something” 的意思更为广泛，因为说话者脑海中可能没有想到特定的东西。

Can I have **something** to eat?

在该句中，“something” 指代的是说话者脑海中想到的特定的，但未命名的东西。

Yes, have **something** from the cupboard.



“anything” 和 “something” 与动词的单数形式连用。

Is there **anything** I can help with?



No, there isn't **anything** you can do.

这是一个否定陈述句，所以用 “anything”，不用 “something”。

更多例证

“anything” 用于肯定陈述句，用以说明可选项很多。

Have **anything** you want.



Anything baked by my grandmother tastes delicious.



There's **something** I need to tell you.



We don't have **anything** in common.



Something that I've always enjoyed is kayaking with my friends.



I know I've forgotten **something**, but I can't think what it is.



I'd do **anything** to be able to sing like her.



Something spooky happened last night.



79.4 “NOTHING” 和 “EVERYTHING”

“nothing” 意为没有任何物体或事情。

Tim and James have **nothing** in common.

Tim和James没有任何相同点。



“everything” 意为所有的物体或事情。

Tim and Dan do **everything** together.



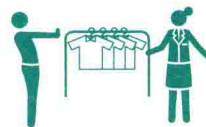
当“nothing”用在肯定陈述句中时，“anything”可以用在否定陈述句中，与前述肯定陈述句表示一样的意思。

There's **nothing** I want to buy here.

[There isn't anything I want to buy here.]

动词为肯定形式。

动词为否定形式。



更多例证

There's **nothing** I love more than a sunny day.



I want to see **everything** at the museum.



Everything is going well at the moment.



I know absolutely **nothing** about Geography.



Nothing at the exhibition was any good.



I do **everything** to the best of my ability.



I love that new Italian restaurant.
Everything tastes so good!



Nothing interests me about politics.



英语的物主限定词、物主代词、撇号加s ('s) 以及动词“have”和“have got”都可以用来表示所有关系。

参见:

疑问句的构成 34 及物动词搭配 53
“this / that / these / those” 65

80.1 物主限定词

物主限定词用于名词之前，用来表示名词的所有者，它的形式会因所有者的单复数和性别不同而有所变化。



Felix is **my** cat.

猫是我的。



Coco is **your** rabbit.

这只兔子是你的。



Buster is **her** dog.

狗归一个女人所有。



Polly is **his** parrot.

这只鹦鹉归一个男人所有。



Rachel is **our** daughter.

我们是她的父母。



John is **their** son.

他们是他的父母。

语法剖析

I



my



my cat



you



your



your rabbit



he



his



his wife



she



her



her sister



it



its



its ball



we



our



our horse



they



their



their son



80.2 物主代词

物主代词也可以表示某人拥有某物。与物主限定词不同，物主代词可以替代其所指的名词。

限定词在名词之前。

This is **my** car.



These are **her** books.



This car is **mine**.



These books are **hers**.



名词在动词之前。

物主代词在动词之后，替代“my car”。

语法剖析

限定词

my

your

his

her

its

our

their

代词

mine

yours

his

hers

its

ours

theirs

更多例证

This is **their** suitcase.



That suitcase is **theirs**.



We're staying in **our** new villa.



The villa is **ours**.



The boy is playing with **his** toys.



All these toys are **his**.



I'll bring some food to **your** picnic.



The rest of the food is **yours**.



80.3 撇号加s ('s)

单数名词后接撇号加s ('s)，用以表明名词之后的事物归这个名词所有。

在英语中，这种说法是正确的，但是并不常用。

the mother of Lizzie

Lizzie's mother

这是表示所有关系的常用表达方法。

用“'s”表示所有关系。



更多例证

如果单词本身以“-s”结尾，表示所有关系时撇号后的“s”可加可不加。

Tess' dog



Tia's rabbit



Dave's grandmother



如果某物的所有者不止一个，只需在最后一个所有者后面加“'s”。

Juan and Beth's parrot



The baby's toy



The dog's ball



⚠ 常见错误 撇号

涉及年份和年代时，撇号常常用错。

I was born in the 1960s. ✓

The best decade was the 70s. ✓



I was born in the 1960's. ✗

The best decade was the 70's. ✗

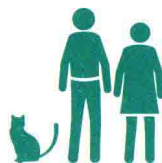
这里既没有表示所有关系也没有省略，所以无须使用撇号。

80.4 撇号和复数名词

遇到以“-s”结尾的复数名词时，若要表示所有关系，只需要加撇号，不需要加“s”。

Ginger is my **parents'** cat.

以“-s”结尾的复数名词只需要加撇号，不需要加“s”。



遇到不是以“-s”结尾的复数名词时，若要表示所有关系，既需要加撇号，也需要加“s”。

Polly is our **children's** parrot.

与单数名词一样，既需要加撇号，也需要加“s”。



更多例证

My **friends'** dog is called Rex.



I'm looking after my **cousins'** rabbit.



That is his **grandparents'** house.



She cares about her **students'** grades.



These are the **men's** rooms.



It depends on the **people's** vote.



注意区别“its”和“it's”。“its”是第三人称单数物主限定词，不能加撇号。“it's”只是“it is”的缩略形式。



The dog is playing with **its** ball. ✓

It's a shiny, red ball. ✓

这里应为物主限定词，所以不能用撇号。

The dog is playing with **it's** ball. ✗

Its a shiny, red ball. ✗

这是“it is”的缩略形式，所以“s”前要加撇号。

80.5 “HAVE”

动词 “have” 可以表示某人拥有某物。

第三人称单数主语
(he、she、it) 后要用 “has”。

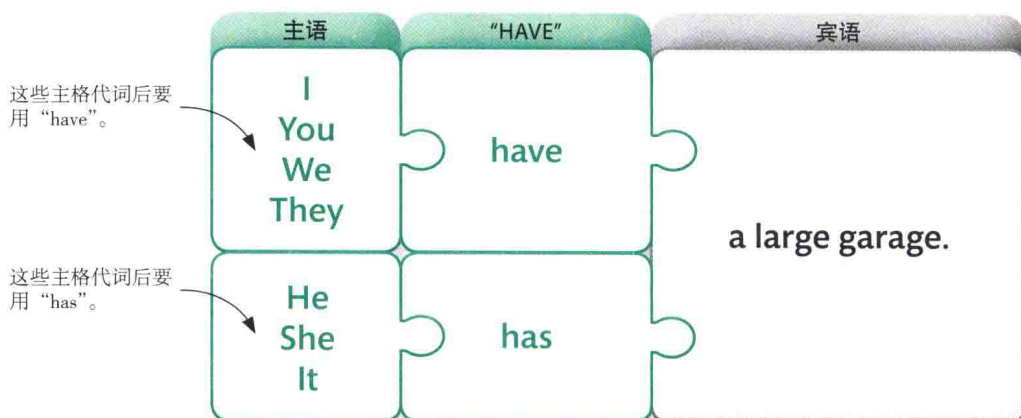
I have a large garage.



She has a yard.



语法剖析



80.6 “HAVE” 的否定

尽管 “have” 是不规则动词，但其否定形式的构成是有规律的。
与其他动词一样，其否定形式也可以缩略。



I have a bathtub.

I { do not
don't } have a bathtub.

“do not” 可以缩略为 “don't”。

如果主语是 she、he、it，用 “does not”，不用 “do not”。

Jim has a bathtub.

Jim { does not
doesn't } have a bathtub.

“does not” 可以缩略为 “doesn't”。

否定句中用 “have”，不用 “has”。

80.7 “HAVE” 和 “HAVE GOT”

在表示所有关系时，“have got”是“have”的另一种说法。“have”适用于一切情况，但“have got”只在英式英语的口语中使用。

I have a new phone.

在该语境中，不能用“I’ve”。



I’ve got a new phone.

当与“got”连用时，“I have”可以缩略成“I’ve”。

无论主语是什么，“got”都保持不变。

I don’t have a dishwasher.



I haven’t got a dishwasher.

当与“got”连用时，“have not”可以缩略成“haven’t”。

Do you have your keys?

在疑问句中，主语放在“do”和“have”之间。



Have you got your keys?

在疑问句中，主语放在“have”和“got”之间。

80.8 回答带有“HAVE”的疑问句

可以使用“do”和“don’t”对带有“have”的疑问句进行简短回答。



Do you have a microwave?

构成疑问句时，要加“do”。

肯定回答用“do”。

Yes, I do.

No, I don’t.

否定回答用“do not”或“don’t”。

带有“have got”的疑问句及其回答的构成方式不同。“have got”常用在英式英语中。



Have you got a microwave?

“have”或“has”放在句首。

“got”不变。

肯定回答用“have”。

Yes, I have.

No, I haven’t.

否定回答用“have not”或“haven’t”。

关系从句是句子的一部分，用以补充主语的信息。
限定性关系从句，对谈论对象起限定、区分作用。

参见：

非限定性关系从句 82
其他关系从句 83

81.1 限定性关系从句

限定性关系从句，用于准确限定和区分说话者所说的那个（些）人或那件（些）事。如果没有从句所提供的信息，句子的意思就会变化。

在该句中，限定性关系从句为主句所提到的人补充了关键信息。

主句 限定性关系从句

She invited lots of friends **who brought gifts.**



在该句中，限定性关系从句为主句所提到的事物补充了关键信息。

主句 限定性关系从句

I'm looking for a job **that I'll enjoy.**



限定性关系从句还可以放在句子中间。

主句 限定性关系从句 主句的其他成分

The job **that I heard about** is interesting.



更多例证

I need a television **that works!**



Do you know anyone **who knows how to fix a bike?**



“that” 可以代表人。

He's the actor **that we saw last week.**

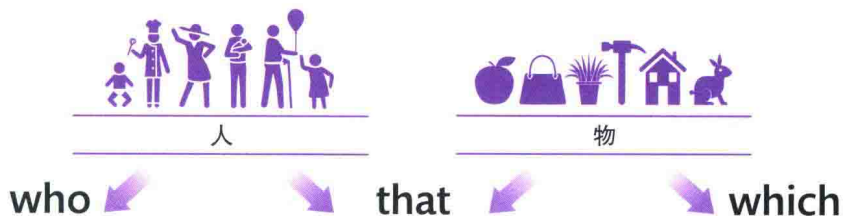


The book **that I just read** is excellent.



81.2 关系代词

在英语中，针对人和物会分别使用不同的关系代词。



81.3 限定性关系从句的主语和宾语

关系从句一般也由主语、动词和宾语构成。它常常以关系代词开头，关系代词在从句中既可以作主语，也可以作宾语。



语法剖析

如果关系代词在从句中作主语，那么它必须出现在句中。



如果关系代词在从句中作宾语，则可以省略。当宾语是人时，关系代词有时用“whom”，但这种用法非常正式。



82 非限定性关系从句

与限定性关系从句一样，非限定性关系从句的作用也是补充额外信息，但并不会改变原句的意思。

参见：
量词 75
限定性关系从句 81

82.1 非限定性关系从句

非限定性关系从句中的“who”指代人，如果所指代的人在从句中作宾语，还可以使用“whom”，但这种用法非常正式。



“which”可以用来指代除人以外的任何东西。有时会用“that”替代“which”，但在非限定性关系从句中使用“that”通常被认为是错误的。



更多例证

Jay, **who I used to live with,** came to stay with us for a few days.



The suspect, **whom we had been following,** was arrested.



All the burglars were arrested, **which was a great relief.**



Our new house, **which is by the beach,** is beautiful.



此处的关系代词指代前面整个句子。

只有在十分正式的语境中才会使用“whom”。

语法剖析

非限定性关系从句既可以放在主句中间，也可以放在主句之后。如果放在主句中间，从句前后都要用逗号与主句隔开；如果放在主句之后，主句句末要加逗号，将主句和从句隔开。



82.2 非限定性关系从句中的量词

非限定性关系从句可以使用量词表述从句所限定的人或事物的数量，在该结构中，“who”变为“of whom”，“which”变为“of which”。

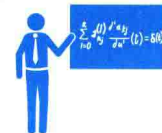
量词 + OF + WHOM

I teach many students, **all of whom** are very talented.



量词 + OF + WHICH

I teach many classes, **some of which** are very difficult.



更多例证

My brother and sister, **both of whom** live in Ireland, are coming to visit.



Lots of people, **many of whom** are famous, will be at the event.



I have four essays due next week, **none of which** are ready.



Tommy has three pets, **two of which** are cats.



83 其他关系从句

关系词所引导的从句用于修饰句子主体部分的名词，不同的名词需要用不同的关系词修饰。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69
所有格 80

83.1 “WHERE” “WHEN” 和 “WHEREBY”

“where” 是表示地点的关系词。

That is the place **where** the judge sits.
[法官坐在那儿。]



“when” 是表示时间的关系词。

He is looking forward to the day **when** he'll be released from prison.
[他盼望着自己获释的那一天。]



“whereby” 是表示过程的关系词。

A trial is the process **whereby** a person is found guilty or innocent of a crime.
[要被判有罪，你必须历经审判过程。]



更多例证

This is the house **where** Shakespeare was born.



Dean is out at the moment. I'm not sure **where** he is.



I remember the day **when** you were born.



Next month is **when** the new students are starting.



They have an agreement **whereby** they share the company's profits.



There's a new system **whereby** students submit their work online.



83.2 “WHOSE”

“whose” 是用来表示所属关系的关系词。

This is the lawyer **whose** client lied in court.

[这位律师的委托人当庭撒谎。]



更多例证

The UK is an example of a country **whose** traffic laws are very strict.



Smith & Smith, **whose** success rate is very high, is a respected law firm.



83.3 “WHAT”

关系词 “what” 意为 “the thing which” 或 “the things which”。

This house is just **what** we were looking for.

[这栋房子就是我们要找的。]



更多例证

I don't know **what** it is, but I'm excited to open it!



These paintings are **what** I've been spending all my time on.



! 常见错误 关系从句中的单词顺序

如果关系从句中使用了 “where” 或 “what” 这类疑问词，疑问词后的单词应按照正常语序排列，不能按照疑问句语序排列。

This is just **what we were** looking for. ✓

正确。

This is just **what were we** looking for. ✗

不要调换主语和动词的位置。

在疑问词后加“-ever”会使其词义发生变化。它们在从句中可以作副词使用，也可以作限定词使用，还可以把两个从句连接到一起。

参见：

冠词 63 单数名词和复数名词 69
方式副词 98

84.1 后接“-EVER”的疑问词

以“-ever”结尾的单词多数表示“it doesn't matter what”“I don't know”或者没有对备选项作出限制。这类词既可以作主语，也可以作宾语。



I'm still going to the game, **whatever** the weather's like.

[不管天气如何，我都要去。]



We can take a taxi or walk, **whichever** you prefer.

[对我来说，坐出租车和步行都可以，你选择哪个都行。]

此处的“whichever”作宾语。



Whoever invented the umbrella was a very clever person.

[我不知道谁发明了雨伞，但我感觉发明雨伞的人很聪明。]

此处的“whoever”作主语。



We'll reschedule for **whenever** the sun comes out next.

[我不知道下一个晴天会是什么时候，但是我们会在那时重新安排时间。]



I always check the forecast for **wherever** I'm going to be.

[不管去哪儿，我都会提前查阅当地的天气预报。]



I'm sure you'll arrive on time, **however** you decide to travel.

[我相信，不管选择什么交通工具，你都会按时到达。]

更多例证

Whatever he tells you,
just ignore it.



Feel free to call in to see us
whenever you're in town.



Whichever you choose, you'll
have to spend a lot of money.



Wherever we end up going this
summer, I know it'll be great.



Whoever did this painting
is a very talented artist.



However he managed to break it,
I'm not sure we'll be able to fix it.



84.2 “WHICHEVER” 和 “WHATEVER” 用作限定词

“whichever” 和 “whatever” 可用在名词之前，表示没有选定具体哪个。



I'm sure you'll love **whichever** dog you choose.

[不管你选择哪一条狗，你都会喜欢。]



If you need help for **whatever** reason, just let me know.

[不管原因是什么，只要你需要帮助，就可以叫我。]

84.3 “WHENEVER” 和 “HOWEVER” 的其他用法

“whenever” 也可以表示 “每次 (every time that)”。



It always seems to rain **whenever** I go away.

[每次我离家度假的时候，都会下雨。]

“however” 常作副词用在形容词前，意为 “到何种程度 (to whatever extent)”。



If there's a chance of rain, **however** small, I'll take an umbrella.

[如果有下雨的可能，不管可能性多小，我都会带着雨伞。]

“there”可以和“be”连用，表示某人或某物的存在。带有“there”的句子有多种时态。

参见：

现在完成时 11 “going to”引导的将来时 17

“will”引导的将来时 18 单数名词和复数名词 69

85.1 一般现在时中的“THERE”

“there is”用于描述单数名词或不可数名词；

“there are”用于描述复数名词。

There is a hospital in my town.



There are three hospitals in my town.



更多例证

There is a market every Saturday.

There is always traffic in the city.

不可数名词。

There are several schools and colleges.

There are some restaurants and bars.

语法剖析



85.2 一般过去时中的“THERE”

在一般过去时中，“there was”用于描述单数名词或不可数名词；“there were”用于描述复数名词。



There was a party here last night.

There were 150 people at the party!

更多例证

There was singing and dancing.



There was a clown to entertain the children.



There was a huge mess to clean afterwards.



There were balloons and streamers.



There were speeches after the meal.



There were waiters to refill the guests' drinks.



语法剖析



85.3 现在完成时中的“THERE”

在现在完成时中，“there has been”用于描述单数名词或不可数名词；“there have been”用于描述复数名词。

There has been a decrease in client satisfaction.



There have been lots of complaints recently.



“been”的形式不变。

更多例证

There has been increased pressure on employees.



There has been a steady rise in unemployment.



There has been a decrease in petty crime.



There has been success in hiring graduates.



There have been many new jobs advertised.



There have been some thefts in the office.



There have been more training days for staff.



There have been big bonuses this year.



语法剖析

“THERE”

“HAS BEEN”

单数名词

其他句子成分

There

has been

a decrease

in client satisfaction.

“THERE”

“HAVE BEEN”

复数名词

其他句子成分

There

have been

lots of complaints

recently.

85.4 将来时中的“THERE”

在“will”引导的将来时句子中，“there will be”既可以用来描述单数名词，也可以用来描述复数名词。

There will be a fire drill on Monday.

There will be fire wardens around to help.



在“going to”引导的将来时句子中，“there is going to be”用于描述单数名词；“there are going to be”用于描述复数名词。

There is going to be a big announcement.

There are going to be big changes!



更多例证

There will be a train strike next week.

There is going to be a meeting at the office.

There will be replacement bus services.

There are going to be severe delays.

语法剖析

“THERE”

There

“WILL BE”

will be

单数名词 / 复数名词

a fire drill

其他句子成分

on Monday.

“THERE”

There

“IS GOING TO BE”

is going to be

单数名词

a big announcement.

“THERE”

There

“ARE GOING TO BE”

are going to be

复数名词

big changes!

86 引导词 “it”

当句子主语不明确时，使用 “it” 代替主语，有时被称作傀儡主语或形式主语。

参见：
限定性关系从句81
非限定性关系从句82

86.1 “IT” 作形式主语

“it” 可用于表述时间、日期、距离或天气。在这类句子中，“it” 没有确切的意思，但是从语法层面上讲，“it” 是句子的主语。

“it” 可以表述时间。

What time is **it**?

It's 3 o'clock.



“it” 可以表述距离。

How far is **it** to the beach?

It's 1 mile that way.



“it” 可以表述星期、日期、月份或年份。

What day is **it**?

It's Tuesday.



“it” 可以表述天气。

What's the weather like today?

It's cloudy and raining.



更多例证

It's 2 o'clock in the morning.
Please stop singing!



I'm going to walk to work.
It's only two miles away.



It's the 21st century. I can't believe you still use that phone.



I'm surprised that **it's** so sunny in the middle of January.



86.2 引导词“IT”

一些以“it is”开头的固定搭配可以用在句首。
“it”作句子的主语，用于表述一般性的真理或观念。



“IT”从句

不定式分句

It is easy to make mistakes in a new language.

一些“it”引导的从句可以接带“to”的不定式。

“IT”从句

“THAT”从句

It is a shame that so many people give up.

一些“it”引导的从句可以接“that”从句。

更多例证 引导词“IT”



It is important to be relaxed about making mistakes.



It's unlikely that you will be comfortable speaking aloud at first.



It is essential to give yourself time to study regularly.



It's true that being able to speak a second language is useful.



It is difficult to remember facts if you don't write them down.



It is often said that going to the country of the language helps.

87 强调

“it” 从句、“what” 从句或者把某个名词置于句首都可以用来对某个单词或短语进行强调。

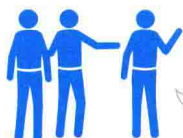
参见：

动词类型 49 限定性关系从句 81
非限定性关系从句 82

87.1 使用“IT”从句进行强调

通过在某个句子成分之前加“it is”或“it was”，并在之后加“that”，可以实现对该成分的强调。通过强调可以消除误解，或突显某些意想不到的事情。

You've met my friend John before, haven't you?



在需要强调的名词短语之前加“it is”或“it was”。

这里强调的是我之前遇到的不是John。

主要动词前加“that”。

No, **it was your friend Michael that** I met.

这里的“your friend Michael”是句子的重点。

主要动词放在最后。

更多例证

第二个从句是关系从句，多由“that”“which”或“who”引导，也可以用“when”和“where”引导，但不够正式。

It is the engine that
I need to replace.



It was summertime when
Zoe last saw her cousins.



It was the doctor who
I needed to call.



It was in a bar where
Olly first met his wife.



It was the cold weather which
made me sick.



It was the price which
changed my mind.



It was my colleague who
prepared the food.



It was the toaster that
set off the fire alarm.



87.2 使用“WHAT”从句进行强调

要对普通的陈述句进行强调，可以添加“what”和动词“be”。该结构常与表达感情的动词连用，例如：“love”“hate”“like”和“want”。

Would you like to go to a movie?

这种表达方式比“I really want to go to bed early”的强调意味更加浓厚。



No, thanks. **What** I really want **is** to go to bed early.

“what”放在句首。

强调的信息放在“what”从句之外。

更多例证

What we hated **was** the bad service.

What I like here **is** the weather.

What they loved the most **were** the museums. **What** she enjoys the most **is** the music.

87.3 使用名词进行强调

如果句子的主语不能用“what”替代（如：人、地点、时间），可以使用意义相近的一般性的名词替代。



I've been to many countries.
The place I most enjoyed visiting **was** Nepal.



I've read about some great people.
The woman I respect the most **is** Marie Curie.



I don't know why the show was canceled.
The reason they gave **was** not good enough.



I have lots of fun memories.
The evening I remember most **is** my first concert.

88 倒装

倒装就是调换正常的词序，通常用在特定的状语之后，
可以表示强调或用来增加句子的戏剧感。

参见：

一般现在时 1 动词类型 49
频度副词 102

88.1 否定状语后的倒装

在正式文本或书面文本中，若有“not only”“not since”
和“only when”这类否定状语，为了表示强调，会将后面的
动词和主语的位置进行调换。



这是一个简单句，主语在动词之前。

She is a famous singer. She is also a very good actor.

Not only is she a famous singer, **but she's also** a very good actor.

否定状语后的主语位置和动词
位置进行了调换。

此处的“but”可用可不用。

更多例证

助动词和主语调换位置。

Not since my childhood **have I** enjoyed a performance so much.

Not until the performance was over **did he** look up at the audience.

如果句中没有助动词，要加“do”。

Only if it stops raining **will the race** go ahead this afternoon.

Only when he emerged from the car **did the fans** start cheering.

Only after the race **did he** realize what he had achieved.

Little did they know how lucky they are to be successful.

Little did they realize how difficult fame would be.



88.2 时间状语后的倒装

“no sooner” 和 “never before” 这类具有否定意义或限定意义的时间状语后也可以用倒装，强调的对象是事情发生的时间。

这是一个简单句，主语在动词之前。

Tina had just released an album when she starred in her first movie.

主语 (“Tina”) 和助动词 (“had”) 调换位置。



No sooner **had Tina** released an album **than** she starred in her first movie.



更多例证

Hardly had she stepped out of the car **when** fans surrounded her.



Rarely do you meet a celebrity with such talent and style.



Never before had a song reached the top of the charts so quickly.



Only sometimes does it not snow during the ski season.



88.3 “SO” 和 “NEITHER” 后的倒装

表示与某个肯定陈述相同的状况时，要使用 “so...”，其后的 “be” 和主语或者助动词和主语的位置需要调换。如果是否定陈述，要用 “neither...”，其后的词序调换与第一种情况相同。如果句子中没有助动词，进行词序调换时要添加 “do”。

I've never been to China.

Neither have I.



I need to get some new clothes.

So do I.



如果句子中没有助动词，要添加 “do”。

I'm excited for the party tonight.

So am I!



89 省略

为了避免重复，或在去掉某些单词句意依然明确的情况下，可以删除句中的某些单词，这就是省略。

参见：
疑问词 35
并列连词 110

89.1 连词后的省略

当两个短句由“and”“but”或“or”连接时，各种类型的重复单词一般会省略。

He bought tickets, **but** [he] didn't go.

“and”“but”或“or”后面
重复出现的主语一般会省略。



She loved the original **and** [she loved] the sequel.

如果句意清楚，重复的
主语和动词可以省略。



I'm happy to go out **or** [I'm happy to] stay home.

如果句意清楚，已经出现过的且没
必要重复出现的单词可以省略。



提示

除“and”“but”和
“or”以外，其他连词
后面一般不省略。

更多例证

She said she'd call, **but** she
didn't [call].



Please may I have a
knife **and** [a] fork?



I hope my camera works, **but**
I don't think it will [work].



I'd love to be a boxer, **but** I'm not
strong enough [to be a boxer].



You can watch the documentary
or [you can watch] the cartoon.



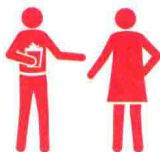
I can't decide if I want a
burger **or** [I want] a hotdog.



89.2 口语中的省略

如果可以通过语境理解出单词想要表达的意思，那么这类单词也可以省略。这种省略没有严格的规则，在日常非正式对话中常常使用，尤其是在回答问题时。

What time does the movie start?



Eight.

[8点钟开始。]

What kind of popcorn would you like?



Salted, please.

[请给我咸味的爆米花。]

What did you think of the film?



Complete nonsense.

[我感觉这部电影纯粹是胡扯。]

89.3 疑问词引导的从句

“who” “what” “where” 和 “how” 这些疑问词后面的从句可以省略。

Somebody stole my watch, but I don't know **who** [stole it].



I want to buy my dad a present, but I'm not sure **what** [to buy him].



I want to go away, but I can't decide **where** [to go].



I need to fix my car, and I'm fairly certain I know **how** [to fix it].



90 不定式省略

为了避免重复，由不定式组成的短语有时可以省略或简化，这样可以使语言变得更自然。

参见：
不定式和分词 51

90.1 省略的不定式

如果句意依然清楚，可以省略“to”后面的成分，仅保留“to”，无须重复不定式的所有内容。

Let's see that new DJ tonight.



I don't really want to [see the new DJ].

如果原来的句子或分句含有“be”动词，那么“to be”结构必须保留，不能仅保留“to”。

She **was** really critical of the new album.



It's difficult not to **be** [critical of it].
The singing is awful!

更多例证



He asked me if I wanted to cook tonight, but I'd prefer not to.



All my friends are going to the basketball game, but I don't want to.



I was going to bring an umbrella, but I decided not to.



There **are** more flowers in the garden than there used to **be**.



This packaging **isn't** recyclable, but it ought to **be**.

90.2 省略整个不定式分句

在“agree”“ask”“forget”“promise”“start”和“try”等动词后，整个不定式分句都可以省略，或者仅保留“to”。



Chris is going to come to the show. He $\begin{cases} \text{promised [to come].} \\ \text{promised to [come].} \end{cases}$

在一些名词，如：“chance”“plans”“promise”“idea”和“opportunity”后，也可以使用同样的省略方式。

I haven't seen this band before. I'd love the $\begin{cases} \text{chance [to see them].} \\ \text{chance to [see them].} \end{cases}$

在一些形容词，如：“delighted”“afraid”“willing”和“determined”后，也可以使用同样的省略方式。

I want to perform on stage, but I'm $\begin{cases} \text{afraid [to perform on stage].} \\ \text{afraid to [perform on stage].} \end{cases}$

更多例证

We need to leave soon, but I'm not **ready**.



I would travel the world if I had the **money**.



I want to go out, but I haven't got any **plans**.



I would never do a bungee jump. I don't have the **courage**.



They told me I could join the team if I **wanted to**.



I'm going to pass my driving test. I'm **determined to**.



Remind me to lock the door, or I'll **forget to**.



Thanks for asking me to come to your wedding. I'd **love to**.



90.3 带有补语的动词

对于带有补语成分（对其意义起补充作用的短语）的动词，其后的不定式不能全部省略，必须保留“to”。这些动词包括：“advise” “afford” “be able” “choose” “decide” “expect” “hate” “hope” “love” “need” 和 “prefer”。

**We want to see a band tonight,
but we really can't afford to.**



更多例证

I tried to get to the front of the crowd, but I **wasn't able to**.



You could bring some snacks along, but you don't **need to**.



I had piano lessons as a child, but I didn't **choose to**.



I have never been to the opera, but I would **love to**.



90.4 “WANT” 和 “WOULD LIKE”

“want” 或 “would like” 之后的不定式分句一般要保留 “to”。

**He asked if I wanted to go,
and I said I would like to.**



在 “if” 从句中，“want” 或 “would like” 后可以单独保留 “to”，也可以省略整个不定式。

**You can come with us if you { want.
want to.**

在否定从句中，不可以省略 “to”。

Don't go to the concert if you don't want to.

更多例证

We could play golf this weekend, if you **want**.



I asked my friends to play, but they **didn't want to**.



90.5 不定式的简化

有时，可以只用“to”，不用重复不定式的全部内容。

Do you go to Spain every year?



We **used to**.

[我们以前每年都去西班牙。]

名词和形容词之后的不定式有时可以全部省略。

Are you ready to leave?



No, I'm **not ready yet**.

[我还没作好离开的准备。]

不定式中有作助动词的“be”或“have”时，“be”或“have”一般不省略。

She isn't paid much, but she **ought to be**.



“she ought to” 是错的。

[她本应得到更多的报酬。]

“like” “love” “hate” “prefer” “want” 和 “choose” 后的“to”一般也不会省略。

Do you want to go to the festival?



I'd **like to**.

“I'd like” 是错的。

Do you want to cook tonight?



I'd **prefer not to**.

不能用“I'd prefer not”。

91 替代

除了省略（删除冗余词语），使用较短的词语替换某些短语也是避免重复的有效方法，这种方法被称为替代。

参见：
可数名词和不可数名词 70
一般过去时 7

91.1 用“ONE / ONES”和“SOME”替代

“one”和“ones”可以用来替代单数名词和复数名词。“ones”只能用来指代特定的一组事物。当还没有确定具体是哪组事物时，用“some”，“some”还用于替代不可数名词。

单数名词

Does anyone have a copy of the book?



Yes, I have **one**.

“one”替代“a copy of the book”。

复数名词

Are there any bookstores near here?



Yes, there are **some** on Main Street.

There are **a few great ones** across town.

“ones”只适用于对话特指某一类人或事物时。

更多例证

I got a raise at work, even though I didn't ask for **one**.



I knitted some scarves and sold **a few**.



“a few”可以替换“some”。

Those new computers look great. I want **one** for my birthday.



I went shopping for dresses and found **some lovely ones**.



I need a new phone, but I don't know where would be the best place to buy **one**.



I saw there were new pastries at the bakery, so I thought I'd try **some**.



91.2 用“DO”替代

为了避免重复，对动词及其补语也可以使用替代词进行替代。
例如“do”和“did”就常用来替代动词的现在式和过去式。

There's water everywhere.
Should I call a plumber?



Oh no! Yes, **do**.

使用“do”来避免重复提及“call a plumber”。

I **think** this homework is really difficult.

I **did** too, so I asked for help.

用“do”的不同形式替代“think”。



I **don't**. It's easy.

更多例证

I need to brush my teeth more.



Yes, it's important that you **do**.

I thought the exam was really easy.



I **didn't**. I really struggled.

91.3 用“SO”和“NOT”替代

在肯定句中，表示看法的动词后可以用“so”来避免重复。在否定句中，用“not”或“not...so”。

Will she be signing copies of her book?

No, I **don't think so**.

I **hope so**!



I'm **afraid not**.

更多例证 在否定句中用“NOT... SO”和“NOT”替代

It **appears not**.

It **doesn't seem so**.

“not”或“not...so”要与“appear”“seem”或“suppose”连用。



I **don't imagine so**.

I **hope not**.

“not...so”要与“think”“believe”“expect”或“imagine”连用。

“not”要与“hope”“assume”或“be afraid”（当“afraid”意为“sorry”时）连用。

92 形容词

形容词是用来修饰名词的词。英语中的形容词通常放在其所修饰的名词之前。形容词可以分为几种不同的类型。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69

92.1 形容词的用法

在英语中，形容词通常放在其所修饰的名词之前，不用与名词保持单复数或其他方面的一致。

He is a **busy** man.



She is a **busy** woman.



不管修饰男性还是女性，
形容词的形式都一样。

It is a **busy** town.



These are **busy** streets.



不管修饰单数名词还是复数
名词，形容词的形式都一样。

更多例证



This is a **red** shirt.



It's a **cold** day.

These are **tall** buildings.



She does **great** concerts.



92.2 形容词的其他用法

有时形容词可以用在“be”
或“become”这些动词之后。

形容词可以用在“be”
动词之后，置于句末。

The town is **busy**.



更多例证



That house is **beautiful**.



He is **annoyed**.



The cake is **delicious**.



She is very **tired**.



Natalie's dress is **long**.

92.3 事实形容词的类型

事实形容词描述的是其所修饰名词的具体事实。
事实形容词又分为很多种类。

大小

The children saw an **enormous** dog. 

形状

It's a **round** ball. 

年龄 (新旧)

My great-grandmother is very **old**. 

颜色

Nicole just loves her **red** hat. 

国籍

I love eating **French** pastries. 

材质

I've bought some **leather** shoes. 

92.4 观点形容词的类型

观点形容词表述某人对某事物的看法。一般观点形容词可以描述很多不同类型的事物，具体观点形容词只能描述特定类型的事物。

一般观点形容词

I just bought a very **nice** guitar. 

“nice” 是一般观点形容词，它可以描述很多不同类型的事物。






具体观点形容词

Sylvester is such a **friendly** cat! 

“friendly” 是具体观点形容词，一般只用来描述人或动物。

92.5 形容词的顺序

使用多个形容词修饰一个名词时，形容词必须按照特定的顺序排列：观点形容词放在事实形容词之前；一般观点形容词放在具体观点形容词之前；事实形容词在句中的顺序要根据其类型来确定。

	 一般观点	 具体观点	 大小	 形状	 年龄(新旧)
Brie is a		delicious		round	
He's a	nice	intelligent			young
I love your					new
That's a	lovely		little		
	观点形容词		事实形容词		

92.6 以“-ING”和“-ED”结尾的形容词

以“-ING”结尾的形容词

以“-ing”结尾的形容词描述某事物对外界产生的影响。

The spider is frightening.

蜘蛛会令人恐惧。

以“-ED”结尾的形容词

以“-ed”结尾的形容词描述某事物受到外界影响后产生的反应。

The man is frightened.

这个人感到害怕。



提示

在英语中，一般很少连续使用超过三个形容词来修饰一个名词。

颜色	国籍	材质
	French	cheese.
		man.
green		dress.
		china cup.

Brie is a **delicious** **round** **French** cheese.



He's a **nice**, **intelligent** **young** man.



I love your **new** **green** dress.



That's a **lovely** **little** **china** cup.



更多例证

The fireworks are **amazing**.
She is **amazed**.



The wasp is **annoying**.
He is **annoyed**.



The roller coaster was **thrilling**.
They were **thrilled**.



The vacation is **relaxing**.
He is **relaxed**.



I found the book too **confusing**.
I was **confused** the whole time.



Your lecture was **interesting**.
I was **interested** by your lecture.



The final scene was really **shocking**.
Everyone was really **shocked**.



That film was very **boring**.
I was very **bored**.



等级形容词可以通过副词改变其含义的强弱；非等级形容词描述的是绝对的特质，一般不能用等级衡量。

参见：
形容词 92
程度副词 100

93.1 等级形容词

等级形容词可以用副词修饰，其原本含义的强度会因副词不同而不同。

副词改变形容词的强度。

事物可以“更好一些”，也可以“更不好一些”，所以“good”是等级形容词。

This book is **very** good!



This book is **fairly** good.



This book is **not very** good.



更多例证



Edmund is **extremely** talented.



Edmund is **reasonably** talented.



Edmund is **not particularly** talented.



This soup is **really** tasty!



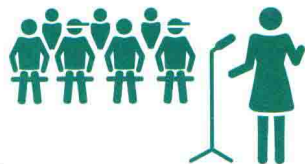
This soup is **pretty** tasty.



This soup is **not very** tasty at all.

93.2 非等级形容词

非等级形容词一般不能被其他单词修饰。这类形容词大致可分为三种类型：表示极端、表示绝对及表示类属。



“fantastic” 这类非等级形容词不能用副词修饰。

Her arguments were **fantastic**!

表示极端的形容词

表示极端的形容词是等级形容词的“加强版”。这类形容词包括：“awful” “hilarious” “fantastic” 以及 “terrifying” 等。

“awful” 已经包含了
“extremely” 这层意思。

Her presentation was **awful**.

表示绝对的形容词

表示绝对的形容词不能分级，是因为它们描述的是固定的品质或状态。这类形容词有：“unique” “perfect” “impossible” 等。

事物不可能“更加独一无二”
或“更加不独一无二”。

She has a **unique** presenting style.

表示类属的形容词

表示类属的形容词用于描述某物属于特定的类型或种类。这类形容词包括：“American” “nuclear” “medical” 等。

The audience was **American**.

更多例证

It's **boiling** in here. Can we open a window?



I'm **terrified** of spiders and snakes!



I am **certain** that he is the right person for the job.



Let's go for a walk. The weather outside is **perfect**.



94 形容词比较级

形容词比较级用于比较两个事物。这种比较通过在形容词后加后缀“-er”或在形容词前加“more”或者“less”实现。

参见：
单数名词和复数名词 69
形容词 92

94.1 形容词比较级

大多数只有一个音节或者两个音节的形容词，比较级是在形容词后面加“-er”。

Ahmed is **tall**.
Ahmed is **taller** **than** Jonathan.



加“-er”变成形容词比较级。

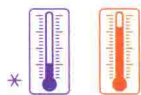
“than”用来引出被比较的对象。

更多例证



Dean is **stronger** **than** Carlos.

A plane is **faster** **than** a train.



5°F is **colder** **than** 85°F.

Sanjay is **younger** **than** Tina.



Emma is **older** **than** Sharon.

My friends are **quicker** **than** me.



⚠ 常见错误 形容词比较级后的“THAN”

“then”和“than”很容易混淆，因为它们发音相似，但“then”绝对不能跟在形容词比较级后面。

Ahmed is **taller** **than** Jonathan. ✓

在比较级中，要使用“than”。

Ahmed is taller **then** Jonathan. ✗

“then”和“than”发音相似，但在形容词比较级后面用“then”是不正确的。

94.2 比较级的构成

形容词比较级的构成有一定的规则，形容词词尾不同，适用的规则也不同。

形容词

形容词比较级

close

closer

如果形容词以“-e”结尾，直接在词尾加“-r”。

early

earlier

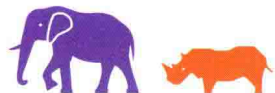
一些形容词以“-y”结尾，去掉“-y”加“-ier”。

big

bigger

以辅音-元音-辅音结尾的单音节形容词，双写最后一个字母，再加“-er”。

更多例证



An elephant is **larger** **than** a rhino.



My bedroom is **tidier** **than** my sister's.



Spain is **hotter** **than** England.

94.3 不规则的形容词比较级

一些常见的形容词变比较级时并无规则可循。

形容词

形容词比较级

good

better

bad

worse

far

farther (US)
further (UK)

提示

在美式英语中，“farther”和“furthest”用来形容比喻意义上的距离远近（而非物理距离的远近）。

更多例证



The house is **farther** **away than** the tree.



Jill got a **better** grade **than** John.



London has **worse** weather **than** Paris.

94.4 多音节形容词的比较级

对于一些双音节词和多音节词，用“more”和“than”构成形容词比较级。



This beach is **more beautiful** **than** that one.

“beautiful” 这个形容词有三个音节，因此“beautifuller” 这种形式是不正确的。

用“less”替代“more”可以表示相反的意义。



This beach is **less beautiful** **than** that one.

语法剖析

主语 + 动词

“MORE / LESS”

形容词

“THAN”

其他句子成分

This beach is

more

less

beautiful

than

that one.

更多例证



Spiders are **more frightening** **than** wasps.



For me, history is **less difficult** **than** science.



This book is **more interesting** **than** that one.



Walking is **less tiring** **than** running.



This dress is **more glamorous** **than** I expected.



My job is **less exciting** **than** I'd hoped.

94.5 有两种比较级形式的形容词

一些双音节形容词有两种比较级形式：可以在词尾加比较级的后缀，也可以在形容词前加“more”。



My cat is { friendlier
more friendly } than my dog.

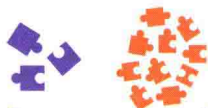
更多例证



The garage is { narrower
more narrow } than the car.



The lake is { shallower
more shallow } than the sea.



This puzzle is { simpler
more simple } than that one.



My parrot is { quieter
more quiet } than yours.



This party is { livelier
more lively } than yours.



The driver is { angrier
more angry } than the cyclist.

⚠ 常见错误 比较级的构成

在构成形容词比较级时，如果已经在形容词后添加了比较级的后缀，则不能再在形容词前加“more”。

He's **more friendly** than her. ✓

He's **friendlier** than her. ✓

“friendlier”和“more friendly”都是正确的，但“more friendlier”不正确。

He's **more friendlier** than her. ✗

94.6 有修饰语的比较级

修饰语可以放在比较级前，用于加强或削弱对比。

The tree is { **a lot**
much } taller **than** the building.

修饰语。 比较级。

这些修饰语表示被比较的两个事物之间的差别很大。



The tree is { **a bit**
slightly } taller **than** the building.

这些修饰语表示被比较的事物之间的差别很小。



The palace is { **much**
far } more beautiful **than** the factory.

比较级较长时，把修饰语放在“more”前面。

把“more”放在形容词前，构成多音节形容词的比较级。



更多例证

The mountain is **much** taller **than** the hill.



The house is **a bit** taller **than** the statue.



The castle is **slightly** bigger **than** the hotel.



The dress is **a lot** more expensive **than** the shoes.



⚠ 常见错误 “VERY” 和比较级连用

不能用“very”修饰比较级。

The tree is **much** taller **than** the building. ✓

The tree is **very** taller **than** the building. ✗

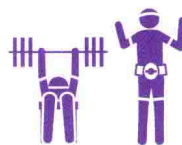
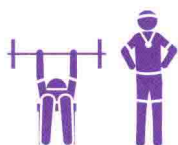
95 比较级连用

两个比较级在同一个句子中连用，可以用来表示一种行为产生的影响或表示正在变化中的事物。

参见：
形容词比较级 94

95.1 比较级连用表示因果

成对使用形容词比较级短语可以表示因果对比。



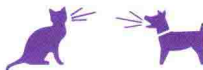
The **harder** I train, the **stronger** I get.

表明训练的结果是我变得更强壮了。

更多例证



The **worse** the children behave, the **angrier** the teacher gets.



The **louder** the cat meows, the **louder** the dog barks.

语法剖析

"THE"

比较级

主语

动词

逗号

"THE"

比较级

主语

动词

The

harder

I

train

,

the

stronger

I

get.

95.2 省略比较级短语

两个比较级连用且以 “the better” 结尾时，由于句意明确，比较级短语经常被省略。

How do you like your tea?



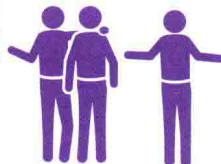
The **stronger** the **better**.

The **stronger** [the tea is,] the **better** [it tastes].

这些词语的意思不言而喻，可以省略。

“the more the merrier”
这个短语的意思是来的人越多越好。

Can I bring my brother along?



Sure! The **more** the **merrier**.

这句话是说欢迎大家前来。

The **more** [people come,] the **merrier** [the party will be].

语法剖析



更多例证

What time do we need to leave?



The **sooner** the **better**.

Do we need to take a big suitcase?

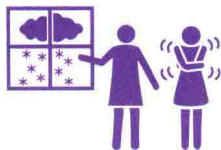


Yes. The **bigger** the **better**.



95.3 比较级连用表示变化

重复使用同一比较级表示某一事物正在发生变化。这一表达强调变化，经常用于描述极端情况。



The weather is getting **colder** and **colder**.

这个重复强调变化正在发生。

“and” 连接重复的比较级。

更多例证

The tree outside my house is growing **taller** and **taller**.



The car went **faster** and **faster** down the hill.



95.4 表示变化的多音节形容词比较级

在多音节形容词的两个比较级中，“more”可以重复但形容词不能重复。



Houses are getting **more** and **more expensive**.

重复 “more”。

形容词只能用一次，用在第二个 “more” 后面。

更多例证



His music is getting **more** and **more annoying**.



My job has become **more** and **more stressful**.

“as... as” 表示比较

“as... as” 结构可用来表示比较，表述事物的相似或相异程度。这一结构可以用副词修饰，对程度的强弱进行强化或弱化。

参见：
形容词 92
程度副词 100

96.1 “AS... AS” 表示比较

“as... as” 和形容词连用，用来比较相似的事物。

Lisa is **as** tall **as** Marc.

用形容词的原形。



Penny is **not** **as** tall **as** Marc.

“not” 表示否定。

“so” 只能用在否定的比较中。



语法剖析

主语 + 动词

“AS”

形容词

“AS”

其他句子成分

Lisa is

as

tall

as

Marc.

更多例证



Will today be **as** hot **as** yesterday?



Your desk is **as** messy **as** mine.



The bus is **not so** crowded **as** the train.



Jenny is **not as** busy **as** Will.

96.2 “AS... AS” 结构和修饰语连用

“as... as” 结构与修饰语连用，强调两者之间的比较或使这种比较更具体。



强调“程度一样”。

Bottled water is **just as** expensive **as** coffee.



比较“相似性”。

The girls were **almost as** loud **as** the boys.



和“almost as”意思相近，但比较的是差异性而不是相似性。

The movie is **not quite as** good **as** the book.



具体指出“差异的程度”。

The bike is **half as** long **as** the car.



强调“差异性”。

The mouse is **nowhere near as** big **as** the bird.

更多例证

Sita is **almost as** frightened **as** Justin.



George is **almost as** tired **as** Hetty.



I think fruit is **just as** delicious **as** cake.



Seth is **nowhere near as** old **as** Mabel.



The door is **half as** wide **as** the window.



The skyscraper is **not quite as** tall **as** the mountain.



97 形容词最高级

形容词最高级，如“the biggest”或“the smallest”，用来表述最大的程度。多音节形容词的最高级是在前面加“most”或“least”。

参见：
冠词 63 形容词 92
形容词比较级 94

97.1 形容词最高级

大多数只有一个或两个音节的形容词的最高级是在词尾加“-est”。

Horses are faster than dogs,
but cheetahs are **the fastest** land animals.

最高级前要加定冠词“the”。

最高级描述的是达到最大程度的那个事物。



更多例证



Giraffes are **the tallest** animals in the world.



Sloths are **the slowest** animals in the zoo.



Blue whales are **the largest** animals in the world.



Dolphins are **the smartest** animals in the world.

语法剖析

主语 + 动词

Cheetahs are

“THE” + 最高级

the fastest

其他句子成分

land animals.

97.2 最高级的构成

形容词最高级的构成有一定的规则，形容词词尾不同，适用的规则也不同。

形容词

close

early

big

形容词最高级

closest

earliest

biggest

如果形容词以“-e”结尾，则在词尾加“-st”。

如果形容词以“-y”结尾，则去掉“-y”加“-iest”。

以辅音-元音-辅音结尾的单音节词，双写最后一个字母，再加“-est”。

更多例证



Driving is **the easiest** way to get there.



The firefighter was **the bravest** person I'd ever met.



This has been **the hottest** summer in years!

97.3 不规则的形容词最高级

一些常见的形容词变最高级时并无规则可循。

形容词

good

bad

far

形容词最高级

best

worst

farthest (US)
furthest (UK)

更多例证



School days are **the best** days of your life.



I was **the worst** at drawing in my art class.



I lived **the farthest** from school of all my friends.

97.4 多音节形容词的最高级

对于一些双音节词和多音节词，在形容词前用“the most”或“the least”构成最高级形式。



The motorcycle is more expensive than the scooter,
but the sports car is **the most expensive** vehicle.

“the most” 和形容词连用。

形容词形式保持不变，不能写成“expensivest”。

The motorcycle is less expensive than the sports car,
but the scooter is **the least expensive** vehicle.

“the least” 的意思与 “the most” 相反。

语法剖析

主语 + 动词

“THE” + MOST / LEAST

形容词

其他句子成分

This is

the most

the least

expensive

dish on the menu.

更多例证

The science museum is **the most interesting** museum in town.



This is **the least comfortable** chair in the room.



The Twister is **the most exciting** ride in the theme park.



Teacups are **the least enjoyable** ride in the theme park.



⚠ 常见错误 最高级的构成

如果形容词已经是最高级了，
则不能在形容词前加“most”。

“best”已经是最高级了，所以没有必要再加“most”。

I am **most best** at running. ❌

I am the **best** at running. ✅

97.5 有修饰语的最高级

“easily”或“by far”修饰最高级，能使程度表达得更强烈。“one of”表明最高级修饰一类事物。

The clock tower is **{easily by far}** the **tallest** building in the town.

这些修饰语强化最高级。

“one of”指明该最高级形容的事物是一类事物中的某一个。

出现多音节形容词的最高级时，修饰语应放在“the”之前。

The clock tower is **one of the most imposing** buildings in the town.

如果“one of”和最高级连用，名词必须用复数形式。

更多例证

Sally is **easily the tallest** person I know.



This hostel is **by far the cheapest** place to stay.



Tim is **easily the shortest** person I know.



The Grand is **by far the most expensive** place to stay.



Physics is **one of the most confusing** subjects I study.



English is **one of the least complicated** subjects I study.



98 方式副词

像 “quietly” 和 “loudly” 这样的词属于方式副词。方式副词修饰动词、形容词、短语和其他副词并传达关于它们的信息。

参见：
形容词 92

98.1 方式副词

方式副词用于描述行为方式，通常跟在其修饰的动词后。

“quietly” 描述我说话的方式。

I speak **quietly**.

He speaks **loudly**.

“loudly” 描述他说话的方式。

Hello.

HELLO!



98.2 语法剖析

大多数方式副词都是由形容词加后缀 “-ly” 构成。如果形容词以 “-y” 结尾，去掉 “-y”，再加 “-ily”，就变成了副词。

bad



badly

careful



carefully

easy



easily

去掉 “-y” 再加 “-ily”。

更多例证

A tortoise moves **slowly**.



Horses can run **quickly**.



She sings **beautifully**.



I can play the piano **badly**.



My dad sneezes **noisily**.



My sister dresses **stylishly**.



98.3 不规则方式副词

一些方式副词并不是由形容词加后缀“-ly”构成的。

good



well

副词与形容词形式完全不同。

straight



straight

副词与形容词形式相同。

early



early

以“-ly”结尾的形容词变副词时无须任何变化。

更多例证

It's dangerous to drive **fast**.



The job didn't last **long**.



Kris often arrives **late**.



Jon always studies **hard**.



98.4 方式副词形式与形容词相同

一些形容词有多重含义，在这种情况下，形容词的词义决定对应的方式副词的形式。

在这里意思是“小”。

Chop the onion into **fine** pieces.

Chop it **finely**.

形容词加“-ly”变副词。“fine”用在这里是不正确的。

在这里意思是“好”。

I'm **fine**.

I'm doing **fine**.

副词与形容词形式相同。“finely”用在这里是不正确的。

更多例证

It's **free** for children.



Children are admitted **free**.

We advocate **free** speech.



You can speak **freely**.

副词有比较级形式，用于比较或呈现区别；
副词也有最高级形式，用于表示极端情况。

参见：

形容词 92 形容词比较级 94

形容词最高级 97 方式副词 98

99.1 规则的副词比较级和最高级

大多数副词的比较级是通过
加“more”或“less”构成的。

比较级

Karen eats **more quickly** than Tim.

Tim eats **less quickly** than Sarah.



大多数副词的最高级是通过加
“most”或“least”构成的。

最高级

Carmen cooks the **most frequently**.

Bob cooks the **least frequently**.



99.2 不规则的副词比较级和最高级

“well”和“badly”与其对应的形容词“good”和“bad”有
相同的比较级和最高级，其比较级和最高级都是不规则的。

形容词

副词

比较级

最高级

good



well



better



best

bad



badly



worse



worst

99.3 短副词的比较级和最高级

对于某些短副词，其对应的形容词的比较级和最高级有时可以用作这些副词的比较级和最高级。



比较级

My dog moves **slower** / **more slowly** than my cat.

两种形式都是正确的。

最高级

My tortoise moves the **slowest** / **most slowly**.

两种形式都是正确的。

更多例证

My sister always runs **faster** than me.



My sister can run fast, but our brother runs **the fastest**.



I got to work **earlier** than everyone else today.



I always arrive **the earliest** when I cycle, as I beat the traffic.



I'm training **harder** than my friend for the judo competition.



This is **the hardest** I've ever trained for a competition.



99.4 副词的比较级和最高级

与形容词形式相同的副词，其比较级和最高级就是在词尾添加“-er”和“-est”。

比较级

My colleague always works **later** than me.

最高级

My boss always stays **the latest**.



100 程度副词

程度副词可以放在形容词和动词前，强化或弱化其原有意义。一些副词只能和特定的形容词搭配使用。

参见：
形容词 92
等级形容词和非等级形容词 93

100.1 等级副词

与等级形容词一起使用的副词被称为等级副词。
等级副词能够强化或弱化形容词的词义。

提示
等级形容词是指能够通过副词调整强弱程度的形容词。



更多例证

My brother is **extremely** talented.



That discussion was **fairly** heated.



The sunset was **remarkably** pretty.



I'm feeling **slightly** unwell.



This TV show is **not very** exciting.



I'm **not particularly** happy about this.



100.2 非等级副词

修饰非等级形容词的副词被称为非等级副词。非等级副词的词义多为“完全”或“几乎完全”。非等级副词通常不能修饰等级形容词。

提示

非等级形容词通常不被等级副词修饰。

Her presentation was **absolutely** awful!



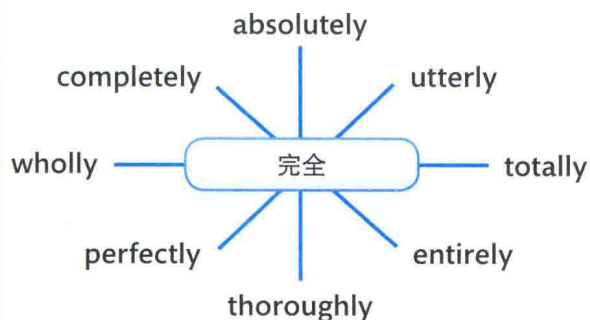
She has a **totally** unique presenting style.



She had a **completely** American audience.



常见的非等级副词



更多例证

The rain is **utterly** torrential.



Our trip was **totally** awesome.



My twin sons are **entirely** identical.



Your answers were **perfectly** correct.



This class is **essentially** pointless.



The weather's **almost** perfect.



This test is **practically** impossible.



I've **virtually** finished my work.



100.3

“REALLY” “FAIRLY” 和 “PRETTY”

一些副词既可以修饰等级形容词，也可以修饰非等级形容词。
这些副词有“really”（意思是“非常”），“pretty”和“fairly”
（意思均为“很……，但并不非常……”）。

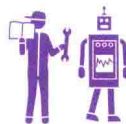
What you need is a **really** { **good**
great } idea.

等级形容词。



You need to be **fairly** { **confident**
certain } it works.

非等级形容词。



Inventing a new product is **pretty** { **difficult**
impossible }.



100.4

“QUITE”

“quite”既可以修饰等级形容词，也可以修饰非等级形容词。在美式英语中，“quite”通常指“非常”。在英式英语中，“quite”对等级形容词的词义起弱化作用，意思是“没那么”；对非等级形容词的词义起强化作用，意思是“非常”或“完全”。

Her invention is **quite incredible**.

[她的发明绝对是让人难以置信的。]



Her idea was **quite good**.

[她的主意真的很棒。(美式)]

[她的主意不错，但称不上很棒。(英式)]

更多例证

I proposed to my husband.
It was **quite perfect**.



I find it **quite necessary** to
shower after exercise.



I was **quite upset** when
I lost my pet rabbit.



It can be **quite difficult** to adjust
when you move abroad.



⚠ 常见错误 等级副词和非等级副词

通常只有等级副词才能修饰等级形容词，也只有非等级副词才能修饰非等级形容词。

等级副词

This book is **very good**. ✓

This book is **absolutely good**. ✗

非等级副词

The plot is **very great**. ✗

The plot is **absolutely great**. ✓

100.5 使用程度副词来修饰动词

“quite” “really” 和 “absolutely” 可以用来修饰动词，这些修饰词必须放在动词前。

在英式英语中，“quite” 的强调意味不如 “really” 强烈；在美式英语中，“quite” 的强调意味更浓。

I **quite enjoy** cycling.

“quite” 可用在 “enjoy” 和 “like” 之前。



“really” 意思是 “a lot more”。

I **really like** cycling.

“really” 可用在 “like” “love” “enjoy” “don't like” 和 “hate” 之前。



“absolutely” 是表示极端意义的副词。

I **absolutely love** cycling.

“absolutely” 可用在 “love” 和 “hate” 之前。



更多例证

He **quite likes** playing tennis.



He **really loves** eating cake.



She **really enjoys** playing guitar.



I **really don't like** cooking.



She **really hates** waking up early.



They **absolutely hate** singing.



101 时间副词

时间副词为某事发生的时间提供更详细的信息，也可用于谈论持续进行的事件或动作。

参见：
现在进行时 4
现在完成时 11

101.1 “JUST” 和 “ABOUT TO”

这些副词为何时发生某事或是否发生过某事提供更详细的信息。

Tom has **just** arrived home
and he's **about to** go to bed.

某事刚刚发生。

某事即将发生。



刚刚过去不久



现在



不久的将来

更多例证

I've **just** called a cab. It should be here soon.



I'm on my way. I've **just** finished packing my suitcase.



I was going to have a meal at the airport, but the plane has **just** arrived.



The flight attendant is **about to** bring us food.



The plane is **about to** land. We must fasten our seat belts.



I'm **about to** book a table for tonight. How many of us are there?



101.2 “ALREADY” 和 “YET”

“already” 用于表达某事已经发生，通常是说事情比预期发生得早。“yet” 的意思是“到目前为止”（“until now”），表示某事还未发生但即将发生。

The show has **already** started,
but we haven't arrived **yet**.

已经发生。

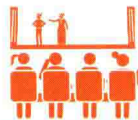
还未发生。



过去



现在



将来

更多例证

What time is Andrew going to get here?



He's **already** arrived.



Has Rob cooked the dinner?



No, not **yet**.



Have you booked the taxi?



No, I haven't called them **yet**.



I'll order the pizzas now.



It's OK. I've **already** ordered them.



101.3 “STILL”

副词 “still” 表示某个动作或场景仍在发生或持续。

I'm **still** watering the flowers.



过去

现在

更多例证



I'm **still** working. I won't finish until 7 tonight.



The shop is **still** open. Let's go in before it closes.



The phone is **still** ringing. Will someone answer it?



We **still** live in the same house, but it's too small for us now.

102 频度副词

频度副词表示事情发生的频率，包括从非常频繁地（“always”）做某事到从不（“never”）做某事整个区间。

参见：
疑问句的构成 34

102.1 频度副词



I {
always
nearly always
very often
usually
often
frequently

这些词表示事情一直发生或经常发生。

take a shower in the morning.



I {
regularly
sometimes
occasionally

这些词表示事情有时会发生。

cycle to work.



I {
rarely
hardly ever
almost never
never

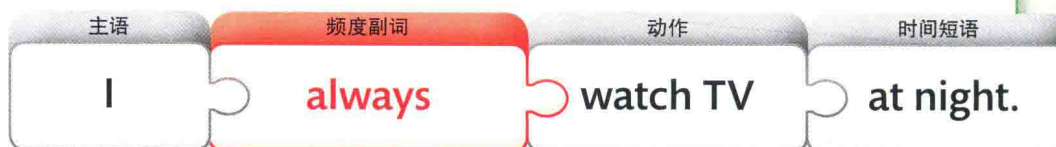
这些词表示事情很少发生或从不发生。

eat dinner after 10pm.



语法剖析

频度副词通常放在主语和主要动词之间。
时间短语通常放在句尾。



102.2 频度副词和有关频率的短语

频率还有更准确的表达方式。与频度副词不同，这些有关频率的短语必须放在动词短语之后。



频度副词通常放在动词前。

I { often
regularly
hardly ever } go running.

这些频率表达更准确，通常放在动词短语之后。

I go running { five times a week.
every Tuesday.
once a year. }

102.3 有关频率的疑问句

“how often” 用来询问某人做某事的频率，“when” 用来询问做某事的日期或时间。

How often do you go away?



I usually go away once a year.

When do you go running?



I go on Thursday nights.

更多例证

How often do you go to the beach?



Not very often.

How often do you see your friends?



All the time.

When do you go to the gym?



On Tuesdays and Fridays.

When does your family eat dinner?



At 6pm every evening.

“so” 和 “such”

“so” 和 “such” 这两个副词与固定的词搭配使用可以起到进一步强调的作用。这两个词意思相近，但适用的结构不同。

参见：

形容词 92 形容词比较级 94

方式副词 98 副词的比较级和最高级 99

103.1 “SO” 和 “SUCH”

和大多数副词不一样，“such” 可以用在名词前起进一步强调的作用，也可以用在形容词加名词结构前。

“SUCH” + “A/AN” + 名词

The trial was **such** a success.



“SUCH” + “A / AN” + 形容词 + 名词

It was **such** an important experiment.



提示

“such” + “a / an” 更常与表示极限意义的名词连用，较少与表示中性意义的名词连用。

“so” 可以用在形容词和副词前起进一步强调的作用。

“SO” + 形容词

The reaction is **so** dangerous.



“SO” + 副词

The surgery went **so** well!



提示

“so” 不能单独用在比较级前。

“so much” 可以用在形容词比较级和副词比较级前起进一步强调的作用。

“SO MUCH” + 形容词比较级

This hospital is **so much** cleaner than that other one.



“SO MUCH” + 副词比较级

Diseases spread **so much** faster as a result of air travel.



103.2 “SO” 和 “SUCH” 与 “THAT” 连用

“that” 可以跟 “so” 和 “such” 连用，引出被强调的事实所带来的结果。

“SUCH” + “A / AN” + 名词 + “THAT”



The disease is **such** a mystery **that** it doesn't even have a name yet.

“SUCH” + “A/AN” + 形容词 + 名词 + “THAT”



This is **such** a strange injury **that** it is hard to diagnose.

“SO” + 形容词 + “THAT”



Medical research is **so** expensive **that** drugs are often costly.

“SO” + 副词 + “THAT”



He recovered **so** quickly **that** he was able to go home the next day.

“SO MUCH” + 形容词比较级 + “THAT”

The new treatment was **so much** more effective **that** he felt better the same day.



“SO MUCH” + 副词比较级 + “THAT”

Hospitals are now being built **so much** more quickly **that** more people can be treated.



“enough” 和 “too”

“enough” 用于表示事物的程度或数量合适。“too” 用于表示事物太多。

参见:

可数名词和不可数名词 70
形容词 92 方式副词 98

104.1 形容词 / 副词 + “ENOUGH”

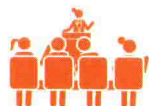
“enough” 用在形容词或副词后表示程度合适。

形容词 + ENOUGH

This house is **big enough** for us.



副词 + ENOUGH



She isn't speaking **loudly enough**. I can't hear her.

更多例证



This food isn't **hot enough** to eat.



My bag is **big enough** for my books.



The traffic isn't moving **quickly enough**.



I didn't read the instructions **carefully enough**.

104.2 名词 + “ENOUGH”

“enough” 和 “not enough” 用于谈论可数名词和不可数名词的数量。“enough” 放在名词前。

Do we have **enough balloons**?

“balloons” 是可数名词。



We only have two. That's **not enough**.

“enough” 可以单独使用，不跟名词。

Do we have **enough food**?

“food” 是不可数名词。



We have these snacks. That'll be **enough**.



104.3 “TOO” + 形容词 / 副词

“too” 可以用在形容词或副词前表示“太多”。

TOO + 形容词

That meal was **too big**. I'm so full.



TOO + 副词

This bus is going **too slowly**. I'm going to be late.



更多例证

“far” 和 “much” 用在 “too” 前表示强调。



In winter my house is far **too cold**.



Jo takes her job much **too seriously**.



My coat is **too big** for me.



Jessica talks far **too quietly**.



Don't go swimming in the lake. It's **too dangerous**.



I'm never on time for work. I always wake up **too late**.

104.4 “ENOUGH” 和 “TOO” 与不定式连用

英语中的 “enough” 和 “too” 与不定式连用，表示某物的程度或范围是否合适到足以使不定式所表述的事情发生。

Is this mango ripe **enough** to eat?



Yes, it's ripe **enough** to eat.



No, it's **not** ripe **enough** to eat.



No, it's **too** ripe to eat.



105 介词

介词用于表示句子各部分之间的关系，
比如时间关系、位置关系或因果关系。

参见：

不定式和分词 51 不及物动词搭配 54
单数名词和复数名词 69 人称代词 77

105.1 简单介词

简单介词表述另外两个单词之间的关系，通常是介词短语的一部分，且该介词短语由介词加宾语（名词、代词或名词短语）组成。

There's a beautiful park **by** my house.

“by”表述公园和我家的位置关系。



Chrissy goes to the gym **on** Wednesdays.

“on”表述 Chrissy 去健身房的时间。



105.2 复合介词

一些介词由两个单词组成，
但作为一个整体使用，其用法与单个介词用法相同。

The bank is **next to** the library.



105.3 平行介词

当同一介词用于多个并列的
词语时，这个介词只需出现
一次。

I sent presents **to** Al and [to] Ed.



如果不同的单词需要搭配不同的介词，每个介词都必须
出现，不能省略。

Look **at** and listen **to** the teacher.



105.4 介词和动名词

如果动词紧跟在介词之后，那么这个动词一定以动词“-ing”形式出现的动名词。



After **graduating**, I worked in a hospital.

介词。

动名词。



更多例证

Instead of **applying** for a job, I went to college.



After **seeing** the job listing, I wrote a cover letter.



105.5 介词放在句尾

介词可以放在句子的不同位置，包括句尾。

I'm listening **to** some music. ✓

I like having something to listen **to**. ✓



105.6 “TO”

“to” 会引起歧义，因为它既可以当介词使用，也可以用于构成不定式。

在这个句子中，“to” 是动词不定式 “to see” 的一部分。这样使用时，“to” 不作介词。

在这个句子中，“to” 是 “look forward to” 的一部分，是介词。因此，“to” 后面必须跟名词、代词或动名词。

I'm going **to** see my friends tonight.



I'm looking forward **to** seeing them.

动名词。

106 地点介词

地点介词用来表示两个事物之间的位置关系，使用不同的地点介词会产生不同的意义。

参见：
疑问词 35
介词 105

106.1 “IN” “AT” 和 “ON”

“in” 用于表示某人或某物处于一个大的区域内或处于三维立体空间中。

The Louvre is **in** Paris.



David is **in** his bedroom.



“in” 表明David在卧室里。

“at” 用于表示具体的地点。

Turn left **at** the next corner.



Let's meet **at** the restaurant.



“on” 用于表示所处位置与某物一致、在某物旁边、在某物上面或者依附在某物上。

I love traveling **on** trains.



There's a spider **on** the floor!



更多例证

They live **in** a hot country.



I will meet you **at** the beach.



I like that picture **on** the wall.



The dog is sleeping **in** his basket.



Jane is working **at** her desk.



The books are **on** the table.



106.2 具体的地点介词

一些地点介词可以指明两个事物间具体的位置关系。
这些介词可用来回答“where”引导的疑问句。



The bird is flying
above the cat.



The bird is sitting
on top of the tree.



The dog usually sits
between Ed and Ben.



The cat is {
under
underneath
beneath
below} the table.



Jack is {
next to
near} the tree.



The basket is
in front of the cat.



Jack is hiding
behind the tree.



Sally sits **opposite**
Fred at work.

更多例证

There's a sign **above** the door.



There's a mouse **underneath** the bed!



My house is **near** a lovely park.



The table is **opposite** the television.



I was stuck **behind** a truck
all the way home.



I like those photos
on top of the bookshelf.



107 时间介词

时间介词常用于谈论安排好的日程和例行程序，时间介词可以指明事情发生的时间和持续的时间。

参见：
现在完成进行时 12
介词 105

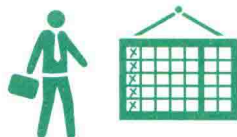
107.1 “ON”

“on” 常用于星期前，表示某事发生在星期几。

I work **on** Mondays.

在美式英语中，此处的介词可以省略。

星期后可以加“-s”，表明某事常发生在那天。



更多例证

The library is closed **on** Sundays.



I'm going shopping **on** Saturday.



I have orchestra practice **on** Fridays.



I'll visit my grandparents **on** Monday.



107.2 “AT”

“at” 通常用于表示某事发生的时间点。

I leave the house **at** 8am.



更多例证

They are meeting **at** 1 o'clock.



I have an appointment **at** 7 o'clock.



I have a yoga class **at** lunchtime.



I get the bus **at** half past 8.



107.3 “ON” 和 “AT” 与 “THE WEEKEND” 连用

使用 “the weekend” 时，美式英语用 “on” 与之连用，英式英语用 “at” 与之连用。



I watch TV { **on** / **at** } the weekend.

“on the weekend” 在美式英语中更常用。

“at the weekend” 在英式英语中更常用。

107.4 “IN”

“in” 有一层含义是 “during”，常用于月份、年份、季节或一天的大概时间（如 “morning” 和 “afternoon”）前。

I go to the gym **in** the morning.



更多例证

I usually watch TV **in** the evening.



She's going to Europe **in** June.



I was born **in** 1973.



I enjoy gardening **in** summer.



107.5 “PAST” 和 “TO”

“past” 和 “to” 这两个时间介词用来表示具体的时间点。

“past” 的意思是过了该小时（“after the hour”）。

It's twenty **past** seven.



“to” 的意思是到该小时（“until the hour”）。

It's twenty **to** seven.



107.6 表示时间跨度的介词

“from... to”或“between... and”常用于表达某事几点发生、几点结束。

“from”用来表示某事发生的时间。

“to”用来表示某事结束的时间。

I work **from** 9am **to** 5pm.



上午9点

“between”用来表示某事发生的时间。

“and”用来表示某事结束的时间。

I work **between** 9am **and** 5pm.



下午5点

“until”表示某种持续的状况结束的时间。

“UNTIL”+ 时间或日期

I will be working **until** five o'clock.



上午9点

下午5点

“since”表示某种持续的状况开始的时间。

“SINCE”+ 时间或日期

I have been working **since** 9am.



上午9点

现在

“for”表示某事持续的时长。

“FOR”+ 持续时间

I have been working **for** six hours.



6小时前

现在

“during”用于表达某事发生的时间区间，而不是某事持续了多久。

I relaxed **during** my break.



休息

现在

⚠ 常见错误 “SINCE” 与时态

“since” 通常与完成时连用，表示“自……以来”，不与一般现在时连用。

since常与现在完成进行时连用。

Tim has been **working** here since last year. ✓

Tim works here since last year. ✗

since不能和一般现在时连用。

107.7 其他时间介词

“by” 用于谈论某事于何时将要被完成，意思是“在……(at)”或“在……以前(before)”。

“BY” + 时间

I will finish this report **by** 3pm.



现在



下午3点

“before” 用于谈论某事早于另一件事发生或在某一时间之前发生。

“BEFORE” + 时间

I will finish work **before** 6 o'clock.



现在



下午6点

“after” 用于表示某事在另一件事之后发生。

I'll clean the tables **after** my break.



现在



休息



未来

108 其他介词

介词还能表示地点、时间之外的关系，比如来源、所有关系、存在关系等。

参见：
被动语态 24 不及物动词搭配 54
介词 105

108.1 “BY”

“by” 在英语中有几种常见用法。

在谈到动作时，“by”指通过某个动作达成特定结果。

结果 动作
I fixed my television **by** hitting it.



用于表述某人写了某作品或做了某事。

I'm reading 1984 **by** George Orwell.



用于表述出行工具。

I always go to work **by** train.



“on foot” 是例外，
无须遵守这条规则。

用于构成被动语态。

This was painted **by** a famous artist.



更多例证

I broke my phone **by** dropping it in a puddle.



It's too far to walk into town.
It's much easier to go **by** bus.



This show is based on a short story **by** Jane Austen.



That new building was designed **by** a famous architect.



108.2 “WITH” 和 “WITHOUT”

“with” 在英语中有几种常见用法。

用于表示“同……一起
(accompanied by)”。

I went to a restaurant **with** my wife.



用于表示所有关系。

I want a job **with** a good salary.



用于表示使用某物完成某个动作。

I cut this apple **with** a knife.



“without” 用于表示某物
不在场、不存在。

Vera came to the party **without** a gift.



更多例证

I need to move somewhere
with better phone reception.



I need to hire someone **with**
excellent computer skills.



Christina paid for the dress
with her credit card.



Wait! Don't leave **without** me!



108.3 “ABOUT”

“about” 主要表示“有关……的主题 (on the subject of)”。

I'm watching a documentary **about** Ancient Greece.



更多例证

I'm going to call the bank
about their bad service.



I'm sorry, but I have no idea
what you're talking **about**.



109 依存介词

一些词必须和特定的介词连用，这些介词被称为依存介词。与依存介词连用的词可以是形容词、动词或名词。

参见：

动词类型 49 单数名词和复数名词 69

形容词 92 介词 105

109.1 带依存介词的形容词

在句子中，一些形容词后总是跟着同样的介词。

形容词 + 介词

It was **good of** my friend to offer to babysit last night.



在同一个句子中，一些形容词可以选择不同的介词搭配而不改变句意。

“surprised” 后跟 “at” 或 “by”，
无论跟哪个都不会改变句意。

You seemed **surprised** { **at** / **by** } their behavior.



更多例证

The babysitter was **angry about** looking after naughty children.



The children are **impressed by** practical jokes.



My parents are **annoyed with** me for not cleaning my room.



Janine is **tired of** watching children's shows on TV.



My friends are getting **ready for** their new baby.



She is **excited about** going hiking in the mountains.



109.2 带依存介词的动词

一些动词后总是跟着特定的介词，介词放在宾语前。不同的动词后跟不同的介词。

动词 + 介词



The head chef used to **shout at** the staff to encourage them to work harder.

更多例证

The café was **counting on** the new menu to impress its customers.



The café **advertised for** another chef to join the team.



The head chef **spoke to** the manager about hiring more kitchen staff.



What do you **think about** leaving early on Fridays?



109.3 动词后跟“TO”或“FOR”

一些动词后可以跟“to”或“for”，根据上下文决定选择哪一个。
“to”通常表示事物的转移，“for”表示某人从某事或某物中获利。



He **sold** the house **to** the family.

[这家人买了房子。]



He **sold** the house **for** the family.

[他代表这家人把房子卖了。]

109.4 带依存介词的名词

在句子中，一些名词后总是跟着同样的介词。

名词 + 介词

I always keep a **photograph of** my family on my desk.



在同一个句子中，一些名词可以选择不同的介词搭配而不改变句意。

“advantages” 后跟 “in” 或 “to”，无论跟哪个都不会改变句意。



There are **advantages** { **in** / **to** } moving away to study.

更多例证

It is important to have a positive **attitude toward** studying.



The **cause of** traffic jams is often bad town planning.



I've been working hard to find a **solution to** this problem.



There has been a steady **increase in** students passing their exams.



The **demand for** public buses increases every year.



Take your time planning a **response to** the essay question.



109.5 与不同依存介词连用的词

一些形容词、动词和名词后可跟不同的介词，词组意义由搭配使用的介词决定。

I'm **anxious for** my vacation to start.

[要休假了, 我很兴奋。]



I'm **anxious about** being late for my flight.

[我担心赶不上航班。]



He **talked to** the teacher.

[他和老师交谈过了。]



He **talked about** the teacher.

[他和别人交谈, 谈论的内容是他的老师。]



I have a good **relationship with** my parents.

[我和父母之间的关系很好。]



The **relationship between** family members is important.

[家庭成员间保持良好的关系很重要。]



更多例证

I'm **upset about** how badly my exams went.



I'm **upset with** myself for failing my exams.



The charity needs to **appeal for** more volunteers.



The campaigns **appeal to** students.



Pests are a serious **problem for** farmers.



Farmers have a serious **problem with** pests.



110 并列连词

并列连词连接同等重要的单词、短语和从句。使用并列连词时，逗号要遵循特别的使用规则。

参见：
限定性关系从句 81
省略 89

110.1 使用“AND”来连接句子

用“and”连接两个句子可以避免单词重复，还能连接两句的句意。

There's a library. There's a restaurant.

There's a library **and** a restaurant.

“there's”和“there is”意思相同。



用“and”连接句子时，可以省略第二个“there's”。

更多例证



Jazmin's sister lives **and** works in Paris.



I bought a dress **and** some shoes for the party tonight.



My father **and** brother are both engineers.



My sister called earlier, **and** she told me she's pregnant!



Simon plays video games **and** watches TV every night.



I feel sick, I ate two sandwiches **and** a large slice of cake for lunch.

110.2 用逗号代替“AND”

列举超过两件物品时，可以用逗号代替“and”。

在列举物品时，用逗号代替“and”。

There's a library, a store, **and** a café.

逗号放在“and”前。



“and”放在最后两个名词之间。

110.3 “OR”

“or” 常用于列举两个或多个选择。

“or” 用于引出选项。

Do you want to go to Germany **or** France?



“or” 还可用于表示行为的结果（通常是负面的结果）。

“or” 用于表示迟到的结果是错过火车。

Don't be late, **or** you will miss the train.



更多例证



Should we go out **or** should we stay at home instead?



Should we paint the kitchen blue **or** green?



I can't decide whether to get a dog **or** a cat.



Be careful when cooking, **or** you might burn yourself.

110.4 “NOR”

“nor” 表示两件事或多件事不是真的或者不会发生。“nor” 后面要用动词的肯定形式，并且像疑问句那样进行倒装。

I've never eaten lobster, **nor** do I want to.

主语放在动词后。



更多例证



He can't play the guitar, **nor** can he sing.



Fiona didn't turn up to dinner, **nor** did she answer my calls.



My television doesn't work, **nor** does my stereo.

提示

“nor” 在非正式英语中不常用。

110.5 “BUT”

“but” 用于连接一个肯定陈述和一个否定陈述；还可用于对比两个分句。

There's a hotel. There isn't a store.



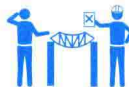
There's a hotel, **but** there isn't a store.



更多例证



My daughter likes to eat apples, **but** she doesn't like pears.



I wanted to be an architect, **but** I didn't pass my exams.



I went to the supermarket, **but** I forgot my purse.



I'm on a diet, **but** I find it hard to avoid chocolate.



My friend does tap dancing, **but** she doesn't do ballet.



My friends invited me out tonight, **but** I don't feel well enough to go.

110.6 “YET”

“yet” 和 “but” 意思相近，用于表述尽管某事已经发生，但另外一件事还是发生了；或者尽管某事与另外一件事相矛盾，但某事仍旧真实存在。

It's a warm day, **yet** Raymond's wearing a coat.



更多例证

George lives in the countryside, **yet** he works in a nearby city.

There was a school near my house, **yet** I went to one on the other side of town.

I've asked him to be quiet and **yet** he continues to talk during lessons.

110.7 “SO”

“so” 作为并列连词时，表示某事是另一件事的结果。

It was a lovely day, **so** we went for a walk.



更多例证



My house was a mess, **so** I spent the weekend cleaning.



The cathedral is very famous, **so** it attracts a lot of tourists.



I don't like pasta, **so** I rarely go to Italian restaurants.



I work outside, **so** I have to be careful that I don't get sunburned.



Stephen moved to London, **so** he speaks English quite well now.



I ate before I came out, **so** I will only have a coffee.

110.8 逗号和并列连词连用

如果并列连词连接的是两个主句，并列连词前应该加上逗号。

It was raining, **and** there was lightning.



如果并列连词连接的是两件物品，则无须加逗号。

I'm going to wear jeans **and** a shirt.



如果“and”或“or”连接三件或三件以上物品，那么每件物品间都要加逗号，且最后一个逗号要放在并列连词之前。

I need eggs, flour, **and** milk.



Would you like tea, coffee, **or** juice?



从属连词用于连接重要程度不同的单词、短语和从句。
从属连词用于表述事情发生的原因、地点或时间。

参见：

一般现在时 1 情态动词 56
限定性关系从句 81

111.1 表示目的的从属连词

“so that” 用于表述动作的目的，后跟从句。



动作



目的

He complained **so that** he'd get a refund.

“so that” 后常跟情态动词，如“can”“could”或“would”。

“in order to” 与 “so that” 意思相近，但后跟动词原形。



He called the company **in order to** complain.

更多例证

在非正式语境中，“in order” 常被省略。

She went back to the store **in order to** show them her receipt.



The assistant took the receipt **to** process the refund.



如果主要动词是过去式，那么“so that”之后的动词通常指向过去。

She reported the problem **so that** it could be fixed.



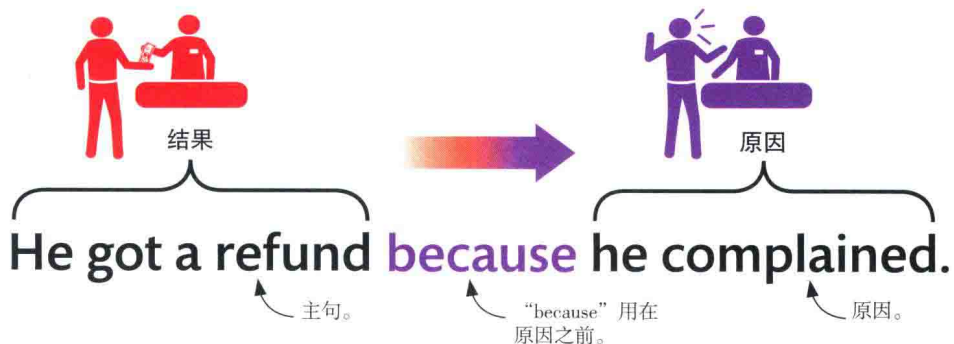
如果主要动词是现在时，那么“so that”之后的动词通常指向现在或将来。

They check everything **so that** customers don't receive broken items.



111.2 结果和原因

“because” 用于谈论某事为何发生，或作出某个决定背后的原因。



更多例证

It's a noisy town **because** there are lots of cars.



My village is quiet **because** there are only a few families here.



I decided to move to the country **because** it's beautiful.



111.3 对比和让步

“although” 用于谈论出乎意料的真实情况。“even though” 与“although” 意思相近，但前者在口语中使用更频繁。

{ **Although**
Even though } I got up early, I was late to work.



更多例证

Although I've done it before, I found the run very difficult.



Even though I have two cousins, I've never met them.



I'm going to the beach this weekend, **even though** I can't swim.



111.4 “WHEN”

在英语中，当“when”用作连词时，用来表述在将来某事发生前一定会发生的事情。这些句子被称为时间从句，通常使用一般现在时。



第一件事



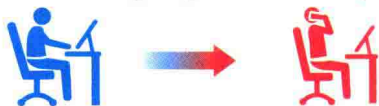
第二件事

When it gets dark, he'll light the fire.

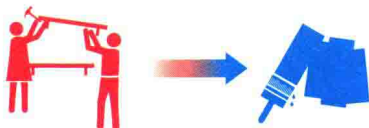
“when”表示第一件事还没有发生。

更多例证

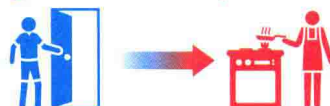
When I finish my report, I'll call you.



I'll put up shelves when the paint dries.

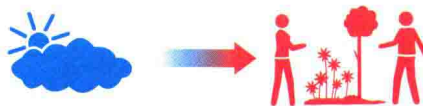


When you get home, will you make dinner?



时间从句也能用于询问将来的事情。

When it stops raining, I'll go out.



另一种表达方式

在时间从句中，英式英语有时用现在完成时，而不是用一般现在时。



When it has stopped raining, we'll go outside.

We'll go outside when it has stopped raining.

We won't go outside until it has stopped raining.

此外的现在完成时表示的也是将来发生的事情。

111.5 “AS SOON AS”

“as soon as” 和 “when” 意思相近，但表示第二件事将在第一件事完成后立刻发生。



现在

I'll call you **as soon as** I leave work.

[我一下班就打电话给你。]

! 常见错误 时间连词后的时态

即使从句表示将来，“when” 和 “as soon as” 后也不用将来时。

尽管发生在将来，也要用一般现在时表述第一件事。

When **it gets** dark, he'll light the fire. ✓

When **it will get** dark, he'll light the fire. ✗

尽管发生在将来，这里也不能用将来时。

111.6 “WHILE”

“while” 用于连接同时发生的两个分句。



I watered the plants **while** my husband mowed the lawn.

更多例证



I chopped the vegetables **while** Ted washed the potatoes.



I didn't get any sleep **while** the owl was hooting outside.



I read the newspaper **while** I waited for the kettle to boil.

112 其他连接词

一些词用于表示两个句子之间的关系或单个句子各个部分之间的关系，如：因果、强调、对比、比较。

参见：

并列连词 110

从属连词 111

112.1 正式的连接词

一些连接词多用于正式写作和讲话。

表示对比。

The castle was built in 1272, { **whereas**
yet } the town is modern.



表示比较。

His talk was popular and his book was { **similarly**
equally } well-liked.



表示原因。

Video calls are popular { **due to**
owing to
as a result of } global internet access.



表示结果。

It's free to visit the museum. { **Hence**
Therefore }, it's very popular.



表示强调。

He is known for his research, { **primarily**
notably } into royal families.



112.2 非正式的连接词

一些连接词多用于非正式写作和讲话。

提示

可以重读连接词，强调前后两部分之间的关系。

表示对比。



I like listening to music, **but** **though** my mother hates it.

表示比较。



He's a talented swimmer, **like** **just as** his great-grandfather was.

表示原因。



The elderly can get around easily, **because of** **thanks to** local bus services.

表示原因。



Staying in touch is easy, **because** **since** **as** we all have smartphones.

表示结果。



We grew up together, **so** we tell each other everything.
We are very close. **As a result**, we know everything about each other.

表示强调。



All my siblings are tall, **especially** **particularly** my older sister.

113 连词总览

113.1 连词

并列连词 连接同等重要的两个单词、短语或从句。

I like roses **and** sunflowers.

并列连词。



I like gardening, **but** I hate mowing the lawn.



连接主语不同的两个主句时，连词前要加逗号。逗号表示前面是一个主句，后面是另一个主句。

Flora tried to water her flowers, **but** the hose burst.

第一个主句的主语。

第二个主句的主语和第一个主句的主语不一样。

逗号放在连词前。



113.2 连词的用法

连词用于表述两个单词、短语或从句之间的各种关系。



条件

if
in case
unless
as long as
so long as
even if



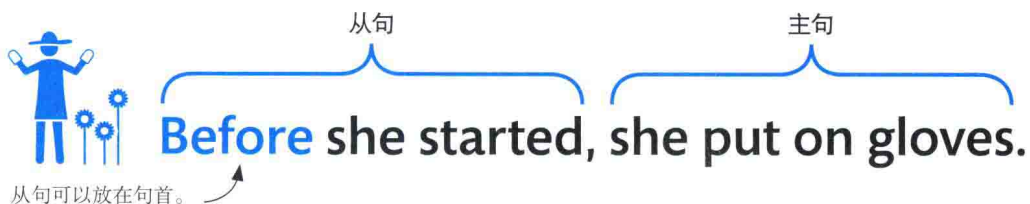
时间

after
until
when
before
while
as soon as

连词表述一个句子两部分之间的关系，分为并列连词和从属连词。

参见：
“either / neither / both” 68
连接词 R25

从属连词 连接重要性不同的两个单词、短语或从句。从句为主句提供更多信息。



对比

although
but
however
even though
whereas
yet



原因

as
because
since



目的

in order to
in order that
so
so that
since

114 前缀

前缀由几个字母组成，可以放在单词前，用来改变词义。

参见：

动词类型 49

单数名词和复数名词 69 形容词 92

114.1 前缀

前缀放在词根前面，改变词义。一般而言，不管什么词，只要加上同一前缀，词义就会发生同样的变化。

im- = not

Polly thought her boss was very rude and **im**polite.



mis- = wrongly

Leona was worried that she had **mis**understood the recipe.



re- = again

Tom was **re**writing his essay because his teacher gave him a low grade.



un- = not

Jane is **un**likely to study history because she prefers science.



更多例证

This exercise is too hard.
It's completely **im**possible!



Brendan had **mis**placed his passport.
He couldn't find it anywhere.



I didn't work very hard this year.
I'll have to **re**take my exams.



Please clean up your desk.
It's very **un**tidy.



A fear of ghosts is totally **irr**ational, they don't exist!



You should go to see the new exhibit.
It's absolutely **out**standing.



114.2 使用前缀

一些词加上不同的前缀，
词义也会不同。

The fish is **cooked** perfectly. It's delicious!



The fish is **undercooked**. It tastes terrible.



The fish is **overcooked**. It's totally burned.



114.3 常见的前缀

前缀	含义	示例
anti-	反对	It's always safer to use an antibacterial handwash.
co-	一起	Erika loves her job because her coworkers are so nice.
dis-	不要, 不	My parents disapprove of my career decisions.
ex-	之前的	Clara is an ex-soldier . She used to be in the army.
im-, in-, ir-	不, 非	Unfortunately, most of my answers were incorrect .
inter-	之间, 其中一个	Matteo's band had become an international success.
mid-	中间	Jo's essay got a low grade because it finished mid-sentence .
mis-	错误地	I think the referee misjudged the situation.
non-	不, 非, 否	I don't like this book at all. The plot is complete nonsense .
out-	比别人好	Yue's work is fantastic. She's outperforming everyone.
over-	过多	It's okay to work hard, but make sure you don't overdo it.
post-	之后	New mothers should receive good postnatal care.
pre-	之前	The experiment will go ahead at a prearranged time.
re-	再, 又	If you don't get into the school, you could reapply next year.
self-	自我的	Ronda can be a little bit too self-confident sometimes.
sub-	在……之下	Mark's work this year has been substandard .
super-, sur-	在……之上, 超过	There's a small surcharge if you want to use a credit card.
un-	相反, 取消, 不	Stacy couldn't find the right key to unlock the safe.
under-	在……之下, 低于	I think the waiter has undercharged us for this meal.

后缀由几个字母组成，可以放在单词后，用来改变词义。

参见：

动词类型 49

单数名词和复数名词 69 形容词 92

115.1 后缀

后缀放在词根后面，改变词义。一般而言，不管什么词，只要加上同一后缀，词义就会发生同样的变化。

-able = possible to be

It's useful to set yourself **achievable** targets at work.



-ful = full of

The principal was so pleased that the play was **successful**.



-ist = someone who

My friend Jamie is the best **artist** I know.



-less = without

I don't like the food in the cafeteria. It is **tasteless**.



更多例证

Hugo is very funny and kind. He's a really **likeable** guy.



I can paint the house in a day. It's definitely **doable**.



Sarah is a **violinist**. She plays in her local orchestra.



Now that I've passed my exams, I am **hopeful** for the future.



What a boring lecture. Being there was **pointless**.



I am a **perfectionist**. My work takes me a long time.



115.2 使用后缀

一些词加上不同的后缀，
词义也不同。

The best jokes are in good **taste**.



That joke was hilarious. It was very **tasteful**.



That joke was offensive. It was very **tasteless**.



115.3 常见的后缀

后缀	含义	示例
-able, -ible	能够	It is perfectly acceptable to submit your essays online.
-al, -ial	具有某种特征	The verdict was based entirely on circumstantial evidence.
-ance, -ence	处于某种状态	Male lions fight each other to assert their dominance .
-ate	变得……	You need to activate your credit card before you can use it.
-dom	某种存在状态	Older children can be given a greater amount of freedom .
-en	变得……	They are planning to widen the roads to reduce congestion.
-er, -or	进行某一动作的人	Shakespeare is probably the most famous English writer .
-ful	充满	The computer is one of the most useful inventions ever.
-ic, -tic, -ical	使具有某种特性	Running is a great form of physical exercise.
-ism	某一行为、状态、系统	Surrealism was a major art movement of the 20th century.
-ist, -ian	从事某一职业的人	A pianist is somebody who can play the piano.
-ity, -ty	某一性质、状态、程度	Equality is the belief that everybody should be equal.
-ize	使……	I'm trying to maximize our profits by selling more stock.
-less	没有, 无	The possibilities of technology are limitless .
-ment	条件、动作	Buying property can be a very good investment .
-ness	状态	Lots of people today are interested in health and fitness .
-ous	使具有某种特质	The inland taipan is the most venomous snake in the world.
-sion, -tion	某种状态、行为	All essays should end with a good conclusion .
-y	有……的; 由……构成的	The weather's terrible today. It's very cloudy outside.

115.4 后缀改变词性

某些后缀只能加在特定的某类词后，一个词的后缀有时能够说明该词的词性。

形容词



-able, -ible

comfortable
manageable
sensible

-al, -ial

accidental
controversial
seasonal

-en

golden
wooden
woolen

-ful

powerful
useful
wonderful

-ic, -tic, -ical

historic
poetic
radical

-less

harmless
powerless
tasteless

-ous

continuous
famous
outrageous

-y

cloudy
funny
stormy

名词



-acy

conspiracy
diplomacy
literacy

-al

accusal
betrayal
denial

-ance, -ence

competence
defiance
dominance

-ant, -ent

accountant
defendant
student

-ism

capitalism
modernism
realism

-ist

optimist
pessimist
pianist

-ity, -ty

equality
royalty
society

-ment

employment
entertainment
government

动词



-ate

activate
debate
inflate

-en

brighten
sweeten
widen

-ify

classify
mystify
simplify

-ize

energize
immunize
minimize

-dom

freedom
kingdom
wisdom

-er, -or

generator
singer
writer

-ness

happiness
sadness
sickness

-sion, -tion

appreciation
collision
infection

115.5 后缀拼写规则

如果后缀以元音开头，词根以“辅音-元音-辅音”结尾，且重读最后一个音节，要先双写词根最后一个字母再加后缀。

occur

↓
occurrence

如果后缀以元音开头，词根以“-e”结尾，则要去掉“-e”再加后缀。词根以“-ge”或“-ce”结尾的词除外。

词根以“-ge”结尾。

debate

↓
debatable

manage

↓
manageable

无须去掉“-e”。

如果词根以辅音加“-y”结尾，变“-y”为“-i”再加后缀。后缀为“-ing”时除外。

plenty

↓
plentiful

apply

↓
applying

后缀是“-ing”时
无须变“-y”为“-i”。

如果词根以元音加“-y”结尾，无须改变“-y”的形式。

词根以元音加
“-y”结尾。

employ

↓
employable

“-y”无须变成“-i”。

在英语中，有一些短语发音或拼写相似，但意思不同。
一定要区分这些短语的用法。

参见：

一般现在时 1 现在进行时 4
“used to” 和 “would” 15

116.1 “GET USED TO” 和 “BE USED TO”

“get used to (doing) something” 表述的是适应新情况直到熟悉、习惯的过程。

Waking up early for my new job was difficult at first, but eventually I **got used to** it.



“be used to (doing) something” 意思是做一件事已经很久了，对这件事很熟悉、习惯。

I've lived in the city for years, so I **am used to** the bad pollution.



更多例证



When I travel, I **get used to** different customs very quickly.

[我旅行的时候能很快适应各地不同的风俗。]



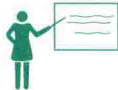
I **got used to** the cold weather within a couple of weeks.

[我用了两周时间适应寒冷天气。]



I **am used to** spicy food as I've always eaten it.

[我习惯吃辣。]



We **were used to** the old teacher, so it was a shame when she left.

[我们习惯了上一位老师，但是她走了。]

提示

不要把这些短语和
“used to”（没有
“be” 或 “get” 的
另一个短语）混淆在
一起，“used to” 用
来表述过去常做
某事。

116.2 “HAVE / GET SOMETHING DONE”

“have” 和 “get” 与名词、过去分词连用，表示某人为另一个人做某事。“get” 没有 “have” 正式。

Did you **get** your computer updated?

[有人帮你升级电脑吗?]



Yes, the company **has** the computers updated regularly.

[有, 有人定期为公司的电脑进行升级。]

更多例证

这一结构和 “should” 连用表示给出建议。

You should **get** your connection checked.

[我认为, 你应该安排个人检查连接情况。]

They haven't **had** the locks changed yet.

[他们还没有找人换锁。]

Will you **get** the oven fixed soon?

[会不会很快有人帮你修烤箱?]

The store **has** its produce checked daily.

[每天都有人检查商店的产品。]

I need to **get** my hair cut.

[我需要有人帮我剪头发。]

Most people **have** burglar alarms installed.

[多数人都安装了防盗警铃。]

语法剖析

主语

“HAVE / GET”

宾语

过去分词

The company

has / gets
is having / is getting
had / got

the computers

updated.

“have” 和 “get” 可以使用不同时代。

宾语是动作的承受者。

英语中有许多单词和短语可以用来解释事情发生的顺序。这些单词和短语也可以用来组织文本，方便读者理解。

参见：
其他连接词 112
调节会话节奏 120

117.1 表示先后顺序的词语

一些单词和短语表明一件事情在一系列事情中发生的时间。



First, he woke up.



Then he ate breakfast.



Next, he had a shower.



After that, he got dressed.



Finally, he went to work.

更多例证



In the morning, we watched the sun rise over the Serengeti.



Meanwhile, we got ready to go on safari.



Finally, we saw some lions.



First, I got some money out of the bank.



Second, I bought some food from the supermarket.



After that, I had some coffee.



First of all, the chef mixed together butter and sugar.



After that, she added eggs and flour.



Finally, she put the mix in the oven.

117.2 正式的组织语言的词语

一些话语标记语能提示下文将要出现的内容。这些话标记语用在正式文本中，用来组织各段落和较长的文段。

提示

这类用于组织语言的词语常常放在从句或句子的开头。

顺序标记语用来整理信息。



First of all,
To begin with,

it is important to consider which courses you want to study.

一些标记语用来引入新观点或更深层次的观点。



Additionally,
Furthermore,
Moreover,

you should keep in mind where you want to study.

一些标记语用来强调例证。



For example,
For instance,

you should consider whether you want to study abroad.



“such as” 只可用在句子中间引入例证。

You can also look at other activities,

such as
for example
for instance

a club or society.

结论标记语用来作出总结。



In conclusion,
Overall,

several factors will affect your choice of college.

118 纠正观点和转换话题

一些特定的单词和短语可用于纠正某人、表示反对、转换话题或承认某一观点。这些词通常用在句首。

参见：

其他连接词 112 论述观点和留余地 119
调节会话节奏 120

118.1 纠正观点、表示反对

一些特定的单词可用于表达不同意某人的观点或纠正误解。



I don't think this painting is worth that much.

Wow! Do you like it?

Actually, it sold at auction for \$2 million.

I don't, **actually**. It's not very impressive.

提示

重读这些词会显得不太礼貌。

更多例证

That play was really good, wasn't it?

Well, I found the plot quite hard to follow, **to be honest**.

But the actors were excellent!

I'm afraid I don't think so. I thought they were terrible.

Did you enjoy the book I gave you?

Actually, I found it quite boring.

Really? It's so well written!

I don't agree. I prefer thrillers.

118.2 转换话题

“by the way” 表示转换话题。



I think this gallery is fantastic.
Oh, **by the way**, did you read the article about this exhibit in *The Times*?

“as I was saying” 表示回到先前被打断或被转移的那个话题。



As I was saying, this is a fantastic exhibit. I really like the range of artwork.

“anyway” 表示回到先前被打断或被转移的那个话题，也可以表示结束这一话题或结束对话。

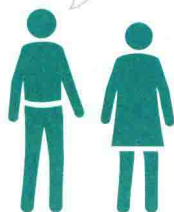


Anyway, I should say goodbye. I want to visit the gallery shop before it closes.

118.3 承认观点

一些特定的单词用于表达同意或承认某一观点（尤其在先前对该观点持怀疑态度时）。

I told you this museum is very expensive.



You're right! I expected it to be cheaper.

更多例证

I think this sculpture is made of stone.



You have a good point. At first I thought it was metal.

This painting could be by Picasso.



I see your point. The style is similar.

119 论述观点和留余地

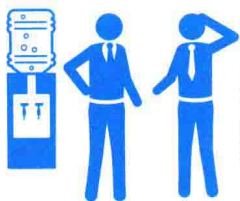
英语中的许多单词和短语可以用来从各个方面论述一个观点或使句意没有那么绝对。

参见：

不定式和分词 51 其他连接词 112
调节会话节奏 120

119.1 论述观点

一些特定的单词和短语可用于讨论或比较某个观点的正反面。



I'm not sure whether to go to the party tonight.

On the one hand, I'd have a great time.
On the other hand, I have work to do.

更多例证

Although my friends will be at the party, I don't want to stay up late.



I could go to the party. Alternatively I could stay in and study.



Of course, there is going to be good music and lots of food.



I don't want to study Art. However, my teacher thinks I'm good at it.

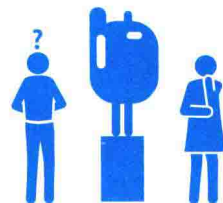


Despite my reservations, I think I'll go to the party anyway.



119.2 留余地

句中可加上留余地的模糊限制语，这样可使句意没有那么确切、直接和绝对。



Polls **suggest** **indicate** that locals dislike the new statue.

留余地的动词。

It is **arguably** **potentially** the strangest statue around.

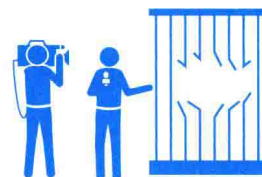
留余地的副词。

To a certain degree,
To some extent, } locals feel their views are being ignored.

留余地的短语。

119.3 “SEEM” 和 “APPEAR”

“seem” 和 “appear” 用于拉开某人与某一论述的距离，适用于说话人不确定论述是否正确时。



The prisoners **seem** **appear** to have vanished.

“seem” 和 “appear” 后常跟动词不定式。

It **seems** **appears** that the prison cell was left unguarded.

“it seems” 或 “it appears” 后可跟 “that” 从句。

It would **seem** **appear** that a file was used to break the bars.

“would” 增加了不确定性。

120 调节会话节奏

在英语中，一些单词和短语可以用于调节会话节奏。这些调节会话节奏的技巧通常被称为组织语言、附和反馈和拖延。

参见：
其他连接词 112
论述观点和留余地 119

120.1 非正式场合组织语言的词语

在会话英语中有许多单词可以用来转换话题。



在讲重要话题前，用“right”吸引听众注意。

Right, let's get started...



“OK”表示确认听到了另一说话人的观点。

... **OK**, and are you happy with your choice?



“so”表示要下结论了。

... **So**, I think we agree overall.

120.2 附和反馈

听别人说话时，常会用到一些表示同意对方观点或表明自己正在专心听讲的词语。这就是回应说话人，亦即：附和反馈。



I'm thinking about doing a course.

Really?

My company has funding...

Wow!

...and I'm really tempted to apply.

OK.

I've just moved house and my commute is very long.

Uh-huh.

The problem is, I don't have much spare time.

Oh right.

The scheme is very competitive. I'll have to see what happens.

Of course.



120.3 拖延技巧

如果在回答一个困难的问题之前需要额外的时间来思考，回答时可以用表示拖延的短语开头，表明正在认真考虑这一问题。

Would you be happy to work weekends?

Well, I do have two children.



What are your strengths?

Good question. I have excellent computer skills.



Why should we hire you?

Let's see... I think my experience would be very useful.



更多例证

So, I'm thinking of quitting my job.

You know, that might be a bad idea.



I mean, the change would be good.

Sort of, but you've always wanted to work where you are now.



Now, I didn't think of it that way.

I kind of think in the long run you'd be much happier staying where you are.



R1 词性

句子由各类单词构成，单词的类型就是词性。只有名词和动词是句子的核心元素，但其他词性的单词（如：形容词和副词）可以使句子更具描述性。

词性	定义	示例
名词	表示名称、物体、概念或人	cat, Evie, girl, house, water, happiness
形容词	修饰名词或代词	big, funny, light, red, young
动词	表示行为动作或人、事、物的状态	be, go, read, speak, swim, walk
副词	修饰动词、形容词和其他副词，提供方式、地点、时间、数量或程度方面的信息	briskly, easily, happily, here, loudly, quite, rather, soon, together, very
代词	用以替代名词	he, she, you, we, them, it
介词	表示名词或代词与句中另外一个单词的关系	about, above, from, in
连词	起连接作用的词，用于连接单词、短语或句子	and, because, but, while, yet
感叹词	表示感叹等	ah, hey, hi, hmm, wow, yes
冠词	用在名词前，表示该名词特指某人（事）还是泛指某人（事）	a, an, the
限定词	置于名词前，将名词带入具体语境的词	all, her, my, their, your

R2 字母表

英语有26个字母。“A”“E”“I”“O”和“U”是元音字母，其他的是辅音字母。

Aa Bb Cc Dd Ee Ff Gg Hh Ii Jj Kk
 Ll Mm Nn Oo Pp Qq Rr Ss Tt Uu
 Vv Ww Xx Yy Zz

标点符号	名称	作用
.	句号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示某个句子的完结 表示某个缩写单词的完结
...	省略号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示文字被省略或某个句子尚未完结
,	逗号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 用于引导词、短语或从句之后 用于隔开句子的非核心成分与核心成分 可以与连词一起使用,用以连接两个主句 分隔列举的多个单词或短语 用于代表省略掉的单词,避免重复 可以将引入语和直接引语分开
;	分号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 将两个关系紧密的主句断开 将复杂列举中的各个条目分开
:	冒号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 连接主句和从句、短语或单词,冒号后面的成分是对主句的解释,或者是对主句某个点的强调 在完整的陈述之后引出列举的项目 引出引用的文本
'	撇号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示此处有字母被省略 表示所属关系
-	连字符	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 在复合修饰语或一些复合名词中连接两个单词 可以用于表示分数或从21到99的数字 可以将特定的前缀和单词进行连接
" "	引号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 可以用在直接引语或引用的文本前后 用于标记出句子中的某个单词或短语 可以用于标记简短的作品名称
?	问号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示疑问句的结束
!	感叹号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示表达强烈感情的句子的结束 可以用在突然结束的句子末尾,用于表示强调
()	括号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 可以用于包裹句中的非核心信息 可以用于包裹解释说明性的文字
—	破折号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 用于插入部分的前后 表示数字范围(5—6小时) 表示路程的起点和终点(巴黎—多佛拉力赛)
•	要点符号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 表示列举的项目
/	斜线号	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 替代“or”表示可供选择的事物

R4 现在时

一般现在时 用来陈述事实，谈论重复性或真理性的事情。



现在进行时 用来表示现在或现阶段正在发生的动作。由“be”加现在分词构成。



R5 祈使句

祈使句 用来表示命令或要求，用动词原形构成。



用“do not”或“don't”构成祈使句的否定形式。

R6 过去时

一般过去时 表示过去某个已经完成的动作，是英语里最常用的过去时。

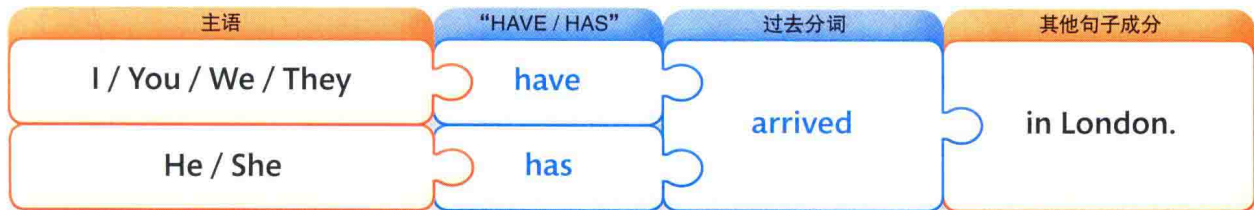


过去进行时 表示过去某个时间正在进行的动作。由“was”或“were”加现在分词构成。

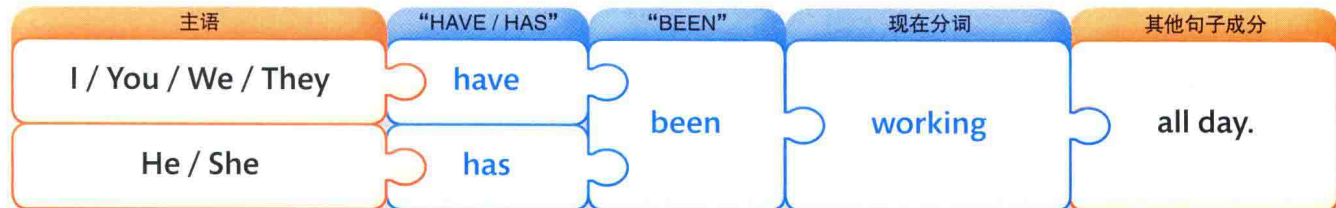


R7 现在完成时

现在完成时 表示过去已经完成并对现在造成影响的事。由“have”加过去分词构成。



现在完成进行时 表示持续进行到现在的某事，可能刚停止，也可能还在继续。



R8 过去完成时

过去完成时 表示在过去某一动作之前已经完成的动作。

主语	"HAD"	过去分词	其他句子成分
I / You / He She / We / They	had	gone	to work already.

过去完成进行时 表示在过去某一动作之前重复进行或持续进行的动作。

主语	"HAD BEEN"	现在分词	其他句子成分
I / You / He She / We / They	had been	studying	English for two years.

R9 "USED TO" 和 "WOULD"

"used to" 后接动词原形，用来谈论过去的习惯或状态；"would" 的用法同上，但只能用来谈论过去的习惯。

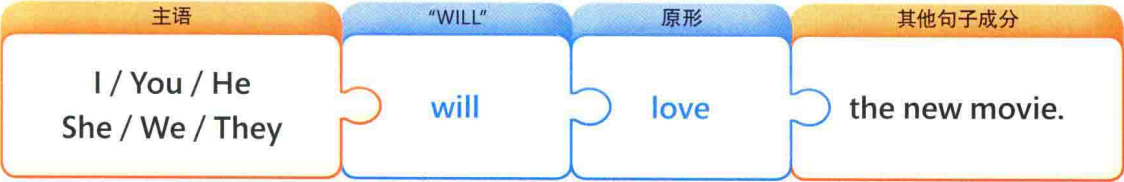
主语	"USED TO / WOULD"	原形	其他句子成分
I / You / He She / We / They	used to would	play	tennis every day.

R10 将来时

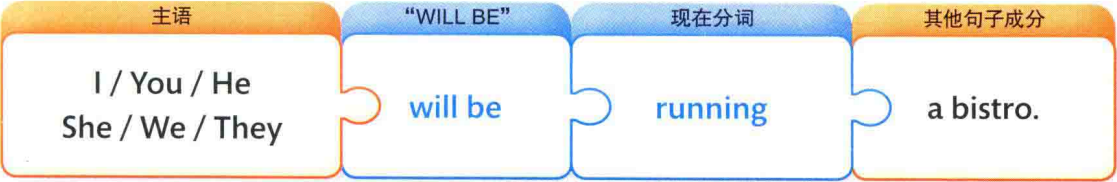
"going to" 引导的将来时 表示说话前已经作出了决定，或是根据现有证据作出了相应推断。

主语	"BE"	"GOING TO"	原形	其他句子成分
I	am	going to	buy	a new car.
He / She	is			
You / We / They	are			

“will” 引导的将来时 表示说话时才作出决定，或在没有证据的情况下作出推断，或主动要做某事，或许下承诺。



使用“will”或“going to”后接“be”及现在分词构成的将来进行时，表示未来某个时间正在发生某事或是正处于某种状态。



R11 将来完成时

将来完成时 表示在未来某事或某时间点之前完成的动作，或同时发生的动作。



将来完成进行时 表示预测一个动作持续的时间。该时态是站在未来某个假想的时间点进行回忆。



时态	肯定陈述句	否定陈述句
含有“be”动词的一般现在时	I am interested in politics.	I am not interested in politics.
含有其他动词的一般现在时	I play tennis every day.	I do not play tennis every day.
现在进行时	He is wearing jeans today.	He is not wearing jeans today.
含有“be”动词的一般过去时	She was at the lecture yesterday.	She was not at the lecture yesterday.
含有其他动词的一般过去时	We cooked enough food last night.	We did not cook enough food last night.
过去进行时	It was raining this morning.	It was not raining this morning.
现在完成时	I have seen the new movie.	I have not seen the new movie.
现在完成进行时	I have been waiting for a long time.	I have not been waiting for a long time.
过去完成时	Sam had cooked dinner for me.	Sam had not cooked dinner for me.
过去完成进行时	Fey had been looking for a new job.	Fey had not been looking for a new job.
“going to”引导的将来时	It is going to be sunny tomorrow.	It is not going to be sunny tomorrow.
“will”引导的将来时	They will be here before 5pm.	They will not be here before 5pm.
将来进行时	Tania will be arriving soon.	Tania will not be arriving soon.
将来完成时	The play will have finished by 7pm.	The play will not have finished by 7pm.
将来完成进行时	I will have been working for a long time.	I will not have been working for a long time.

情态动词	肯定陈述句	否定陈述句
“can”	I can play the piano.	I cannot play the piano.
“could”	I could sing when I was younger.	I could not sing when I was younger.
“should”	We should buy a new house.	We should not buy a new house.
“might”	He might come to the party tonight.	He might not come to the party tonight.
“must”	You must write in pencil.	You must not write in pencil.

代词	"BE"	"WILL"	"WOULD"	"HAVE"	"HAD"
I	I am → I'm	I will → I'll	I would → I'd	I have → I've	I had → I'd
you	you are → you're	you will → you'll	you would → you'd	you have → you've	you had → you'd
he	he is → he's	he will → he'll	he would → he'd	he has → he's	he had → he'd
she	she is → she's	she will → she'll	she would → she'd	she has → she's	she had → she'd
it	it is → it's	it will → it'll	it would → it'd	it has → it's	it had → it'd
we	we are → we're	we will → we'll	we would → we'd	we have → we've	we had → we'd
they	they are → they're	they will → they'll	they would → they'd	they have → they've	they had → they'd
that	that is → that's	that will → that'll	that would → that'd	that has → that's	that had → that'd
who	who is → who's	who will → who'll	who would → who'd	who has → who's	who had → who'd

动词和 "NOT"	缩略形式
is not	isn't
are not	aren't
was not	wasn't
were not	weren't
have not	haven't
has not	hasn't
had not	hadn't
will not	won't
would not	wouldn't
do not	don't
does not	doesn't
did not	didn't
cannot	can't
could not	couldn't
should not	shouldn't
might not	mightn't
must not	mustn't

情态动词和 "HAVE"	缩略形式
would have	would've
should have	should've
could have	could've
might have	might've
must have	must've

⚠ 常见错误 缩略形式

这些缩略形式常常出错，因为其拼写与发音同其他单词相似。缩略形式要用撇号。

You are



You're ✓

Your ✗

They are



They're ✓

Their ✗

There ✗

R14 介词

介词用于表示句子中不同成分之间的关系，比如时间、地点、因果等，其后只能接名词、代词、名词性短语或动名词。

介词	示例	介词	示例
about	Today's lecture is about the Cold War.	in front of	Don't stand in front of the television!
above	The balloon flew above the city.	instead of	Can we have pizza instead of pasta?
after	We can go to the park after lunch.	like	This tastes like butter, but it has less fat.
against	I'm against building new houses here.	near	We live quite near the airport.
among	The document is among these papers.	next to	The supermarket is next to the bank.
at	Let's meet at the bus stop later.	on	I have piano lessons on Tuesdays.
because of	I'm late because of the trains delays.	on top of	Put the vase on top of the bookcase.
before	Could you get here before lunchtime?	out of	Don't let the cat out of her box yet.
behind	The park is behind that hedge.	over	Lots of planes fly over my village.
below	He lives in the apartment below mine.	past	It's ten past nine. You're late!
beneath	Potatoes grow beneath the ground.	regarding	Let's talk regarding your new job.
between	I live between Vancouver and Calgary.	since	I haven't been to Las Vegas since 2007.
between... and	They'll arrive between 7pm and 8pm.	thanks to	Thanks to your efforts, we won a prize.
by	Please pay by the end of the month.	through	Shall we walk through the park?
despite	The café is busy despite the high prices.	throughout	I laughed throughout the whole movie.
during	Turn off your phone during the show.	to	When are you going to Canada?
due to	Due to the rain, the game was canceled.	toward	The child just ran toward his mother.
except (for)	Everyone had arrived except for Liam.	unlike	It's unlike Karen to be so rude.
following	Following losses, the store closed down.	until	We'll be in Portugal until Friday.
for	I haven't been back to Delhi for years.	under(neath)	I think the ball's under(neath) the bush.
from	Our new colleague is from Lithuania.	with	Will you come with us to the concert?
from ... to	I work from 9am to 5pm.	within	I ran the marathon within four hours.
in	There's plenty of food in the cupboard.	without	I've come out without my phone.

R15 形容词与介词

一些形容词与介词有固定搭配。

形容词	介词	示例
afraid	of	It's surprising how many adults are afraid of the dark.
ashamed	of	You should be ashamed of that remark. It was very hurtful.
bored	with	If you're bored with that book, read a different one instead.
close	to	I'm very close to my cousins because we're all similar ages.
crazy	about	All the children at the school are crazy about the same TV show.
different	from (UK) / than (US)	He's always been different from / than other boys of his age.
excited	about	Max was very excited about his first football game.
famous	for	She was mainly famous for her career in politics.
good / bad	at	I've always been very good at geography, but bad at history.
good / bad	for	Too much sugar is bad for us and should be avoided.
good / bad	of	It was very good of you to look after the children for me.
guilty	of	The vandal was found guilty of criminal damage.
impressed	by	I've always been impressed by your ability to forgive people.
interested	in	More and more students are interested in media studies.
jealous	of	Older children are often jealous of their younger brothers or sisters.
keen	on	My parents aren't very keen on classical music.
nervous	of	I've been nervous of dogs since one bit me when I was a child.
pleased	at / with	Most of the voters were pleased at / with the result of the election.
proud	of	The coach felt very proud of his team when they lifted the trophy.
responsible	for	I'm responsible for ensuring that everything runs smoothly.
similar	to	Don't you think she looks very similar to her cousin?
surprised	at / by	We were all surprised at / by the news of your resignation.
suitable	for	The village roads aren't suitable for heavy trucks.
tired	of	We're tired of city life and would like to move to the country.
wrong	with	Can you tell me what's wrong with my answer?

R16 名词与介词

一些名词与介词有固定搭配。

名词	介词	示例
advantage	in	The advantage in going last is that you know the target time.
aim	of	The aim of this lesson is to understand algebra.
amazement	at	I gasped in amazement at the price tag!
anger	at	Sally felt a flash of anger at the suggestion that she hadn't tried.
apology	for	The referee gave a public apology for his bad decision.
belief	in	We share a strong belief in the goodness of people.
cause	of	Political disagreement is the cause of many family arguments.
danger	of / in	The danger in / of trying to please everyone is that you please no one.
demand	for	There is always an increased demand for ice cream in hot weather.
difficulty	in	If you experience any difficulty in breathing, call the doctor.
excitement	about / at	There was great excitement about / at the treasure they had found.
fear	of	Many people experience a fear of flying at some point.
hope	of	The hope of a cure for cancer is growing all the time now.
interest	in	Several teachers have expressed an interest in the new course.
lack	of	The building project will not go ahead because of a lack of money.
photograph	of	Have you seen this photograph of my grandmother's wedding?
point	in	There's no point in arguing; we won't change our minds.
possibility	of	With this grade, there is the possibility of postgraduate study.
problem	with	There was a problem with the delivery of the package.
reason	for	The customer gave poor quality as the reason for her complaint.
response	to	We had a terrific response to our survey about salaries.
solution	to	I can offer you a simple solution to this problem.
success	in / at	He said that his success in / at the sport was down to his training.
surprise	at	There was huge surprise at the result of the election.
way	of	The best way of removing stains is with warm, soapy water.

R17 动词与介词

一些动词与介词有固定搭配。

动词	介词	示例
accuse (someone)	of	The security guard accused the girl of shoplifting.
apologize	for	I'd like to apologize for that last comment.
appeal	to	The magazine really needs to appeal to teenagers.
apply	for	Are you going to apply for that job in the newspaper?
approve	of	Matt doesn't approve of his daughter's new boyfriend.
ask (someone)	about	Can you ask someone about the time of the next train?
believe	in	This company doesn't believe in asking you to work overtime.
belong	to	Does this coat belong to you?
blame (someone)	for	Don't blame me for being late.
compare (someone)	to / with	We shouldn't compare the new teacher to / with Mr. Hockly.
concentrate	on	I'm finding it difficult to concentrate on this homework.
congratulate (someone)	on	Let me be the first to congratulate you on your new baby.
count	on	We're counting on everyone's support for this new venture.
criticize (someone)	for	The politician was criticized for his extravagant lifestyle.
deal	with	This training will help you to deal with difficult members of the public.
decide	against	We've decided against floor-to-ceiling closets.
decide	on	We've decided on pale blue for the bedroom. It looks great.
happen	to	Accidents always seem to happen to Paul. He's very unlucky.
insist	on	The club insists on its members dressing up.
remind (someone)	of	Doesn't Ellie remind you of her mother? She's so like her.
shout	at	There's no point in shouting at the dog. He's deaf!
stop (someone)	from	The yellow band is there to stop people from tripping over the step.
succeed	in	Fran succeeded in passing her driving test on the third try.
think	about	Take time to think about the proposal. There's no rush.
worry	about	It's natural to worry about your children when they're out.

R18 后接动名词或不定式的动词

一些动词后接不定式，一些动词后接动名词，还有一些动词后面既可以接不定式又可以接动名词，意思不变。

后接不定式的动词

advise	compel	hope	promise
afford	dare	instruct	refuse
agree	decide	intend	remind
aim	demand	invite	seem
allow	deserve	learn	teach
appear	enable	manage	tell
arrange	expect	offer	tend
ask	encourage	order	threaten
beg	fail	persuade	wait
cause	forbid	plan	want
choose	guarantee	prepare	warn
claim	help	pretend	wish

后接动名词的动词

admit	discuss	involve	recommend
avoid	dislike	justify	resent
appreciate	enjoy	keep	risk
complete	fancy	mind	see someone
consider	feel like	miss	spend time / money
delay	finish	practice	suggest
deny	imagine	prevent	understand

后接不定式或动名词的动词 (意思不变)

begin	cease	like	prefer
can't bear	continue	love	propose
can't stand	hate	need	start

R19 常见的状态动词

状态动词表述如情感、所有关系、感觉、想法等状态，一般不能用于进行时。

含义	状态动词	示例
感受 / 需求	like / love	I like / love Italian ice cream.
	need	We really need to spend more time together as a family.
	prefer	Most people prefer summer to winter.
	want	The band wants to become famous and make money.
	believe	I believe your story, but it is rather unlikely.
思想	doubt	Lots of people doubt that he can do the job properly.
	know	Do you know where we parked the car?
	mean	What do you mean when you say you aren't ready?
	think	What do you think about the proposed policy?
	understand	Could you speak more slowly? I don't understand you.
存在	appear / seem	It appears / seems that the house has already been sold.
	exist	Strange creatures exist at the bottom of the sea.
拥有	belong	Excuse me, that book belongs to me.
	have / own	My neighbor has / owns three classic cars.
	include	Did you include Lucy in the guest list?
感官	feel	Does your leg feel better today?
	hear	I can hear you, but I'm not sure what you're saying.
	hurt	My arm really hurts . I think I should go to see the doctor.
	see	Can you see the blackbird in the bush over there?
	feel	This rug feels so soft. It would be lovely to walk on.
带有某种特性	smell	Something smells delicious. Is it the soup?
	sound	That sounds like thunder, or is it just fireworks?
	taste	This milk tastes a bit sour. I think it's gone bad.

一些短语动词可以由宾语隔开。顺序上首先是动词，接着是宾语，最后是小品词。一般这种情况下可分也可不分，但如果此类短语动词的宾语是代词，则必须要分开。

短语动词	定义	示例
bring up	抚养孩子长大成人	Samira's grandparents brought her up .
bring up	提出某事	You should bring any problems up with your manager.
carry out	执行动作	If you give me instructions, I'll carry them out .
clean up	清理得干干净净	Can you help me clean the kitchen up please?
do up	整理、装饰	We've bought an old house and we're going to do it up .
fill in / out	填表	Could you just fill this short form in / out for me, sir?
fill up	填满	I'm just going to the gas station to fill the car up .
get back	寻回失物, 拿回自己的东西	The police got my car back after it had been stolen.
give up	不再做某事	Smoking is really bad for you. You should give it up .
hand out	分发	Be quiet! I'm about to hand the exam papers out .
leave out	不包括某人 / 某物	I can't believe that they left you out of the team!
let out	释放某人 / 某物	The school's going to let the children out early today.
look up	查询信息, 比如查字典	When does the show start? Can you look it up for me?
make up	编造	I didn't believe Dave's story. I think he made it up .
pick up	拿住并提起	Pick that paper bag up !
pull down	拆除、破坏	They're going to pull all those old apartments down .
put off	推迟	I'm going to put the party off until Dad feels better.
set up	安排、组织	We're helping to set the music festival up .
take up	有了新爱好	I never thought I'd take birdwatching up , but I love it!
throw away	丢掉	We never throw any food away .
turn down	婉拒、拒绝	It was a great job offer but I turned it down .
turn on	打开某种电器	Quick! Turn the TV on . The final is about to start.
wake up	唤醒某人	Will you wake me up at 8am if I oversleep?
write down	在纸上写东西	Could you write your email address down for me?

R21 不可分短语动词

一些短语动词不可以分开。其宾语即使是代词，也要置于短语动词之后。

短语动词	定义	示例
check in / into	表示到达	Guests may check into the hotel from 4pm.
come across	偶然发现	I came across some old photographs while cleaning up.
cut back on	减少、削减	The government wants to cut back on spending.
deal with	处理、安排	We learned how to deal with difficult customers.
do without	没有某物的情况下做某事	We can do without a vacation this year.
get along / on with	相处融洽	I find it easy to get along / on with people.
get on / off	上 / 下公交车、火车、飞机等	Please take care when you get off the plane.
get out of	下车	Be careful when you get out of the car.
get over	恢复(疾病康复)	It took me a long time to get over the last cold I had.
get through	成功完成	The trial was very stressful, but we got through it.
go over	检查、检验	Remember to go over your answers carefully.
go with	匹配、合适	Does this scarf go with my jacket?
hear from	从某人处听说	Have you heard from your cousins recently?
keep up with	同某人步调一致	Slow down! I can't keep up with you!
look after	照顾	Marie looks after her younger sister after school.
look for	试着寻找、搜查	Peter is going to look for a job when he leaves school.
look forward to	急切期盼未来某事	My children are looking forward to the holidays.
look into	仔细检查	The police are looking into the case.
look up to	尊敬、崇拜某人	Lots of young people look up to sports stars.
run into	偶遇	I ran into Dave earlier. I hadn't seen him for ages.
run out of	没有剩余	We've run out of food. Let's go to the store.
stand for	意味着、代表	What do the initials UNICEF stand for ?
take after	长得像某个长辈	Sally's so stubborn. She really takes after her mother.
turn into	变成其他东西	You can sleep here. The sofa turns into a bed.

R22 易混淆的单词

某些英语单词的发音相似或相同，但意义却不同，正确拼写很关键。

accept / except

I **accept** your apology.
Everyone was on the list **except** for me.

adverse / averse

She was feeling unwell due to the **adverse** effects of her medication.
He was lazy and **averse** to playing sport.

aisle / isle

The bride walked down the **aisle**.
They visited an **isle** near the coast of Scotland.

aloud / allowed

She read the book **aloud**.
He was **allowed** to choose which book to read.

amoral / immoral

Her **amoral** attitude meant that she didn't care if her actions were wrong.
He was fired from the firm for **immoral** conduct.

appraise / apprise

The manager needed to **appraise** the employee's skills.
The lawyer **apprised** the defendant of his rights.

assent / ascent

He nodded his **assent**.
They watched the **ascent** of the balloon.

aural / oral

The **aural** test required her to listen.
The dentist performed an **oral** examination.

bare / bear

The trees were stripped **bare**.
The large **bear** roamed the woods.

break / brake

The chocolate was easy to **break** apart.
The car didn't **brake** fast enough.

broach / brooch

He decided to **broach** the subject for discussion.
She wore a pretty **brooch**.

cereal / serial

He ate a bowl of **cereal** for breakfast.
She found the **serial** number on her computer.

complement / compliment

The colors **complement** each other well.
He paid her a **compliment** by telling her she was pretty.

cue / queue

The actor waited for his **cue** before walking on stage.
The checkout **queue** was very long.

desert / dessert

The **desert** is extremely hot and dry.
She decided to have cake for **dessert**.

draught / draft

There was a **draught** coming from under the door.
He had written a **draft** of the letter.

pore / pour

I could see every **pore** on his nose.
She helped **pour** the drinks at the party.

principle / principal

The man believed in strong **principles**.
He was given the role of the **principal** character.

stationary / stationery

The aircraft landed and remained **stationary**.
She looked in the **stationery** cupboard for a pen.

R23 拼写规则

所有现在分词及动名词都是在动词原形后加“-ing”构成，而某些动词加“-ing”之前还需作细微的变化。

原形	规则	动名词
choose	去掉不发音的“-e”再加“-ing”。	choosing
tie	变“-ie”为“-y”再加“-ing”。	tying
forget	若单词结尾是重读“辅音-元音-辅音”音节，则双写词尾字母再加“-ing”。	forgetting

规则的过去分词都由动词原形加“-ed”构成，而某些动词加“-ed”之前还需作细微的变化。

原形	规则	过去分词
like	以“-e”结尾的单词直接加“-d”。	liked
cry	以辅音加“-y”结尾的单词，将“-y”变为“-ied”。	cried
drop	若单词结尾是重读“辅音-元音-辅音”音节，则双写词尾字母再加“-ed”。	dropped

R24 不规则的复数形式

在英语中，大多数复数名词由单数名词加“-s”构成；但有些复数形式是不规则的，或是词尾不同，或是不作任何变化。

单数	复数
aircraft	aircraft
analysis	analyses
appendix	appendices
axis	axes
bureau	bureaux
cactus	cacti
child	children
crisis	crises
deer	deer
fish	fish
foot	feet
formula	formulae
fungus	fungi
leaf	leaves
loaf	loaves

单数	复数
man	men
medium	media
mouse	mice
ox	oxen
person	people
phenomenon	phenomena
scarf	scarves
series	series
sheep	sheep
species	species
tooth	teeth
vertebra	vertebrae
wife	wives
wolf	wolves
woman	women

连接词用以连接两个或两个以上的单词、短语或从句。连接词通常是连词，也可以是副词短语。

连接词	作用	示例
although / even though	对比	The show went ahead, even though it was raining.
anyway	与上文提到的事情对比	I knew the climb would be hard, but I did it anyway .
and / both... and	连接两个相似的单词、短语或句子	I can speak (both) French and English.
as	表示原因	The experiment failed as the sample was too old.
as long as	表示条件	You can go out as long as you come home by 11pm.
as well as	增添更多信息	Mint is used in savory dishes as well as sweet ones.
because	表示原因	I was late again because the train was delayed.
but	连接两个意思相反的单词、短语或句子	He's quite heavy but he's very fast on his feet.
consequently	表示前文的后果	The vote was close. Consequently , there was a recount.
furthermore	增加支持论点的信息	I love this cream. Furthermore , it's great for dry skin.
however	表示转折	I'd love to come. However , I'm away that weekend.
if	表示条件	These plants will grow better if you water them daily.
in addition	表示补充	I go to the gym a lot. In addition , I run 20km a week.
in order to	表示目的	We moved here in order to be closer to work.
moreover	表示补充	It's quicker to travel by plane. Moreover , it's cheaper.
neither... nor	连接两个不真实、不可能的事	These instructions are neither helpful nor legible.
or / either... or	连接两种选项	We can (either) go to the cinema or have a meal.
since	表示原因	Since dessert is included, we might as well have one.
so	表示结果	It was raining, so we stayed indoors.
so that	表示目的	I'm saving money so that I can buy a house.
therefore	表示结果	It's a very clear night. Therefore , you can see the stars.
unless	表示条件	You won't be able to travel unless you have a visa.
whereas	表示对比	My mother likes tea, whereas my father prefers coffee.
yet	表示对比	Dean is a good musician, yet he can't read music.

英语中有很多表示事情发生时间的单词，这些词常作介词、连词或副词。

时间词	作用	示例
about to	表示很快将要发生	The train on platform 6 is about to leave.
after	表示主句中的某事发生在另一事之后	Wash your hands after you've been gardening.
already	表示在某事或某时间点前已发生的事	Don't worry, I've already ordered some food.
as	表示两件事同时发生	It started raining as we were leaving the house.
as soon as	表示主句中的某事紧接着另一事发生	Please call us as soon as you arrive in New York.
before	表示主句中的某事在另一事之前发生	I was a teacher before I became a politician.
by the time	表示主句中的某事发生在另一事之前，或同时发生	By the time we arrived, the game had started.
eventually	表示经过很长一段时间后终于发生	It was a long wait, but eventually our exam results arrived.
finally	表示某事在一系列事的最后，或经过很长时间后发生	I'd like to thank my family, my team, and finally my fans.
in the end	表示经过很长一段时间后终于发生	Joe took the exam three times, but in the end he passed.
just	表示刚刚发生	Quick! I've just seen something really amazing!
later	表示说话之后或谈及的时间点之后发生	I can't take you to the mall now. We'll go there later .
meanwhile	表示两件事同时发生	The show started at 8. Meanwhile , we went for dinner.
next	表示按顺序发生的事	Stir the melted chocolate. Next , pour it into the cake pan.
once	表示主句中的某事在另一事之后才发生	Once you've cleaned the stove, wipe all the handles.
since	表示从过去到现在一直在发生	I haven't seen you since we were in school!
still	表示过去发生的事还在进行	Are they still repairing the main road?
then	表示按顺序发生，或在某事之后发生	We went to the cinema, then we went out for a meal.
until	表示持续进行直到某事发生	I won't stop saving until I've bought a new car.
when	表示同时进行，或在某事之后发生	Could you call me when all the salespeople have arrived?
while	表示同时进行	Please don't interrupt me while I'm trying to concentrate.
yet	表示预期内的事并未发生，或询问是否已发生	Have you finished the sales report yet ?

术语表

表示绝对的形容词 absolute adjective

说明事物固有的、不可改变的性质或特征的形容词, 例如: unique。

抽象名词 abstract noun

表达抽象概念而非具体事物、具体人的名词, 例如: beauty、hope。

行为动词 (动态动词)

action verb (dynamic verb)

表示动作的动词, 例如: run。可用于一般时和进行时。参见静态动词。

主动语态 active voice

指主语 (人或事物) 是谓语动作的施动者 (动作发出者) 的语态。参见被动语态。

形容词 adjective

用于描述或修饰名词或代词的词, 例如: quick。

副词 adverb

用于修饰动词、形容词或其他副词的词, 例如: quickly。

程度副词 adverb of degree

用以表示程度的副词, 例如: extremely。

频度副词 adverb of frequency

用以表示频率的副词, 例如: usually。

方式副词 adverb of manner

用以表示方式的副词, 例如: badly。

状语 adverbial

起副词作用的短语, 例如: on the table (表地点)、tomorrow evening (表时间)。

施动者 agent

行使某个动作的人或物。是主动句中的主语, 而非被动句的主语。

一致 agreement

即动词的形式与主语正确匹配, 例如: he is = 单数主语 + 单数动词。

撇号 apostrophe

表示所有关系 (如: John's cat) 或表示省略 (如: I'm happy) 的符号。

冠词 article

a、an、the 用以表示某物是特指还是泛指。参见零冠词。

助动词 auxiliary verb

与其他动词 (主要动词) 连用的动词, 作用包括辅助构成时态等; 最常见的是 be、do 和 have。参见主要动词。

反馈语 / 附和语 backchanneling

倾听者为回应说话者而说的话或发出的声音, 例如: Really? 时态后移 backshift

转成间接引语时, 动词时态向后 (向过去) 推移一个时态, 例如: 从一般现在时转变成一般过去时。

原形 (光秃不定式) base form (bare infinitive)

动词最基本的形式, 例如: be、run、write。参见不定式。

基数词 cardinal number

表示数量多少的数词, 例如: one、two。参见序数词。

表示类属的形容词 classifying adjective

用于描述和定义名词类型的形容词, 例如: medical student 中 “medical” 用于描述学生的类型。

从句 clause

含有一个动词的词语组合。

一般疑问句 closed question

可以用 “yes” 或 “no” 回答的问题, 例如: Are you English? 参见特殊疑问句。

集合名词 collective noun

用于表示一组人或事物的单数名词, 例如: family、team。

形容词比较级 comparative adjective

用于将一件事或一组事物与另外一件事或另外一组事物相对比的形容词, 例如: better。参见形容词最高级。

补语 complement

置于系动词 be、become、seem、appear 等后的单词或词组, 例如: She's happy. 中的 “happy”。参见系动词。

复合介词 complex preposition

由两个或多个词构成的介词, 例如: next to、because of。

复合名词 compound noun

由两个或多个词构成的名词, 例如: post office。

复合时态 compound tense

由助动词辅助构成的时态, 例如现在完成时: has done。

具体名词 concrete noun

指看得见、摸得着、听得到、闻得到、尝得到的实体事物, 例如: table、teacher。

条件句 conditional

一种动词结构, 表示一个事件或一种情形的发生依赖于另外一个事件或另一种情形发生的

情况。

连词 conjunction

用于连接两个单词或两个短语、两个句子的词, 例如: and、because、if。

辅音 consonant

英语中除了 a、e、i、o、u 以外的大多数字母 / 发音。y 可以视为辅音, 也可以视为元音。

进行时态 (进行时) continuous (progressive)

进行时用以表示在特定时间段内正在发生的动作, 例如: I'm writing。

缩略 contraction

用撇号连接两个单词, 使其成为一个单词, 例如: we're。

口语中的省略 conversational ellipsis

指在非正式会话中, 将一些单词进行省略的情况。例如: [Do you] Want a cup of coffee?

并列连词 coordinating

conjunction

用于连接两个具有相同重要性的从句的词, 如 and、but、or。参见从属连词。

可数名词 countable

可以用数目计数的名词, 例如: one book、two books。参见不可数名词。

限定性关系从句 defining

relative clause

指以关系代词 (如 who 或 which) 引导的从句, 用于对主句中所提及的事物进行限定。参见非限定性关系从句。

定冠词 definite article

指单词 the, 用于特指其后所接的名词, 例如: the house in the woods。参见不定冠词。

指示限定词 / 指示代词

demonstrative determiner / pronoun

用来指示人或事物的词, 被指代事物与说话者较近时用 this、these, 距说话者较远时用 that、those。例如: This watch is cheaper than that one in the window。

依存介词 dependent

preposition

指用在特定的动词、名词或形容词后的介词, 例如: afraid of。

限定词 determiner

指用在名词之前, 对名词起指代、区分作用的词, 例如: the book、this book。

直接宾语 direct object

指承受动词动作的人或事物, 例如: We followed him. 中的 “him”。参见间接宾语。

直接问句 direct question

指没有开场短语的疑问句, 例如: What time is it?

直接引语 direct speech

实际说出的、用于陈述或提问的句子。例如: It's raining。

话语标记语 discourse marker

指为了引导听众或插入评论而使用的单词或短语, 例如: well、right。

双宾语动词 double object verb

指后面可以接两个宾语的动词, 例如: Give me the phone. 中动词 “give” 后接两个宾语 “me” 和 “the phone”。

形式主语 dummy subject

“it” 替代具体名词充当主语。例如: It's five o'clock。

以 “-ed” 结尾的形容词 -ed adjective

用于描述事物受到的影响, 例如: bored、excited。参见以 “-ing” 结尾的形容词。

省略 ellipsis

指在句中省略单词或短语的现象, 省略原因往往是该单词或短语没必要重复出现。例如: He got up and [he] had a shower。

强调 emphasis

指为突出特定单词的重要性而用更大的声音将其读出的现象。参见重读。

表示极端的形容词 extreme

adjective

指与等级形容词含义相似但所表达的程度更高的形容词, 例如: freezing is cold 对应的表示极端意义的形容词。

第一条件句 first conditional

指 “if” 引导的、用于描述基于某种条件而可能在未来发生某种情况的句子。例如: If it rains, I'll stay here。

中心 focus

指为了强调重要性而置于句首的句子成分。

正式用语 formal

指与对方不熟悉或想要与其保持社交距离时使用的语言。参见非正式用语。

将来进行时 future continuous

由 will be 和现在分词共同构成的时态, 表示在未来某个时间点正在进行的动作。

将来完成时 future perfect

由 will have 和过去分词共同构成的时态, 例如: will have done。表示在未来某个时间点将要完成的动作。

将来完成进行时 future perfect continuous

由 will have been 和现在分词共

同构成的时态,例如: will have been doing。表示在未来某个时间点将要完成的某个进行中的动作。

动名词 gerund (verbal noun) 作为名词使用的动词 ing 形式。例如: No smoking。

等级形容词 gradable adjective 可以使用等级副词(如 very)修饰并且有比较级形式的形容词。参见非等级形容词。

等级副词 grading adverb 能够修饰等级形容词的程度副词。参见非等级副词。

模糊限制语 hedging

表现讲话人不确定、不直接的语气的单词或短语,例如:

apparently, I think。

祈使句 imperative

以命令的口吻讲话。例如:

Stop! 常常是单个动词原形。

不定冠词 indefinite article

指单词 a 和 an, 置于名词前用于泛指人或事物, 或者用于首次提及某人或某事物时。例如: Can I borrow a pen? 参见定冠词。

不定代词 indefinite pronoun 不特指定示某人或某事物的代词, 例如: someone、nothing。

间接宾语 indirect object

指受到及物动词动作影响的人或物, 区别于动作的直接承受者, 例如: I gave the ball to the dog. 中的“dog”。参见直接宾语。

礼貌问句 indirect question

指带有委婉前置语的疑问句, 例如: Can you tell me what time it is?

不定式 infinitive

动词的一种基本形式, 通常带有不定式标志“to”, 例如: to go、to run。

不定式分句 infinitive clause

句内动词为不定式形式的分句, 例如: It's important to complete the form in full.

非正式用语 informal

用于讲话人相互熟悉、双方感觉很放松时。参见正式用语。

以“-ing”结尾的形容词 -ing adjective

用于描述事物具有的影响其他事物的属性, 例如: boring、exciting。参见以“-ed”结尾的形容词。

不可分短语动词 inseparable phrasal verb

指必须与小品词(与动词构成短语动词的副词或介词)连在一起使用的短语动词。例如: I take after my mother, 参见可分短

语动词。

不及物动词 intransitive verb

指后面不可以直接跟宾语的动词。参见及物动词。

引导词 “it” introductory “it”

“it is”置于句首, 用于引导一般概念。例如: It is difficult to ski.

倒装 inversion

指句中两个成分位置调换的现象, 例如: 将问句中的主语和动词的位置调换。

不规则变化 irregular

不适用于一般变化规律的单词, 例如: 不规则复数名词 men。

参见规则变化。

系动词 linking verb

用于连接句子的两个成分(主语和补语)的动词, 如: be、seem、become。不能单独描述某个行为。例如: She is really angry.

主句 main clause

其自身可以构成一个完整意思的句子。参见从句。

主要动词 main verb

指一组动词中具有实际意义的动词, 例如: I can ride a bike. 中的“ride”。

情态动词 modal verb

是助动词的一种, 与主要动词连用表示能力或许可等。

修饰语 modifier

指为其他单词增加额外意义的单词, 例如: really interesting 中的“really”。

否定句 negative

含有 not 或 never 这类单词的句子。

否定状语 negative adverbial

起副词作用且有否定意义的短语, 例如: not only、not until。

非限定性关系从句 non-defining relative clause

由关系代词(如 who、which)引导的从句。其缺失并不影响主句意思的完整性。参见限定性关系从句。

非等级形容词 non-gradable adjective

没有比较级, 只能借助某些程度副词(如 absolutely)表达程度的形容词。参见等级形容词。

非等级副词 non-grading adverb 指可以与非等级形容词连用的程度副词。

名词 noun

指代人、地点或事物的单词。

名词短语 noun phrase

名词、代词或几个与名词连使用的单词, 例如: the blue house。

宾语 object

置于动词或介词后的名词或代词。

宾格代词 object pronoun

指惯常置于动词或介词后的代词, 例如 me、them。

宾语疑问句 object question

疑问词在句中作宾语的问句, 例如 What did you say? 中的“what”。

特殊疑问句 open question

不能用“yes”或“no”回答的问题, 一般由疑问词(如: when 或 who)引导。参见一般疑问句。

序数词 ordinal number

表示顺序的数词, 例如: first、second。参见基数词。

分词 participle

用于构成复合时态的动词形式。参见过去分词和现在分词。

小品词 particle

在动词后面用以构成短语动词的单词。

被动语态 passive voice

表示受动作影响的人或物是句子的主语。参见主动语态。

过去进行时 past continuous

由 was 或 were 和现在分词构成的时态, 例如: was doing。该时态体现的是过去正在发生的动作。

过去分词 past participle

用于构成完成时和被动式的动词分词形式, 例如: walked、done、eaten。

过去完成时 past perfect

由 had 和过去分词构成的时态, 例如: had done。该时态体现的是在过去某个动作或状态之前已经完成的动作。

过去完成进行时 past perfect continuous

由 had been 和现在分词构成的时态, 例如: had been doing。该时态体现的是在过去某个动作或状态之前正在发生的动作。

一般过去时 past simple 仅由动词的过去式构成的时态, 例如 walked、said、ate。该时态体现的是过去完成的动作。

完成时 perfect

完成时是体现两个时间之间联系的时态, 例如: 现在完成时体现了过去和现在的联系。

人称 person

是代词的一种形式, 体现讲话人是谁(I、we)、听讲人是谁(you)或者被提及的人或事是什么(he、she、it、they)。动词也能体现人称, 例如: am 是 be 的第一人称单数形式。

人称代词 personal pronoun

用以指代前文已经提及的人或

事的单词, 例如: he、they。

短语动词 phrasal verb

指动词 + 小品词这种形式, 短语动词与单个动词本身所表达的意义不同, 例如: make up 表示“invent”。

复数 plural

是单词的一种形式, 用于表示所指事物数量大于一, 例如: books、they。参见单数。

肯定句 positive

用于表达某人或某物是什么、做什么的句子。句中不含否定词。参见否定句。

物主限定词 possessive determiner

用在名词前表示所有关系的单词, 例如: my、our、his。

物主代词 possessive pronoun

用于替代名词、表示所有关系的单词, 例如: mine、ours、his。

前缀 prefix

置于词根前面用于改变单词词义的一组字母, 例如: replace 中的“re-”。参见后缀。

介词 preposition

连接两个名词或代词、表明两者关系的简短短词, 例如: to、at、with、from。

介词短语 prepositional phrase

以介词开头的短语, 例如: on the bus、at five o'clock。

现在进行时 present continuous

由 be 的现在时和一个现在分词构成的时态, 例如: is doing。该时态体现的是现在正在进行的动作。

现在分词 present participle

用于构成进行时的动词分词形式, 例如: walking、doing。

现在完成时 present perfect

由 have 的现在时和一个过去分词构成的时态, 例如: have done。该时态体现的是从过去持续到现在的动作, 或者发生在过去但对现在产生影响的动作。

现在完成进行时 present perfect continuous

由 has / have been 和现在分词构成的时态, 例如: has / have been doing。该时态体现的是在过去某个时间点发生并且一直持续到现在依然进行着的动作。

一般现在时 present simple

仅由动词的现在式构成的时态, 例如 walk、say、eat。该时态体现的是当前情况下的一般事实。

代词 pronoun

用于替代前文已经提及的名词的单词, 例如: it、that。

专有名词 proper noun

表示特定人、特定地点、特定日期等的名词，例如：Maria、France、Sunday。

量词 quantifier

指经常用于名词之前表示数量或多少的单词，例如：several、many、much。

疑问句 question

用于对某事（以信息居多）提问的句子。句中动词常置于主语之前。

疑问词 question word

用于引导特殊疑问句。例如：what、which、who、why、how。

附加疑问句 question tag

用于将陈述句转变为疑问句的短语，例如：It's hot today, isn't it? 中的“isn't it”。

反身代词 reflexive pronoun

当主语和宾语相同时，用于指代句子主语的单词。例如：myself。

规则变化 regular

适用于一般变化规律的单词，例如：books 是规则复数名词；waited 是规则变化的过去式。参见不规则变化。

关系从句 relative clause

对主句主语或宾语进行补充说明的句子。

关系代词 relative pronoun

引导关系从句的单词，例如：who、that、which。

间接问句 reported question

对别人提出的问题转述的句子，复述人常常不是问题提出者本人。例如：She asked if the bus was full.

间接引语 reported speech

对已经作出的陈述或已经提出的问题转述的句子，复述人常常不是陈述者或问题提出者本人。例如：He said the bus was full.

转述动词 reporting verb

引导间接引语的动词，例如：say、tell。

词根 root

单词中用于附着前缀或后缀的部分，例如：“employ”是employable的词根。

第二条件句 second conditional

由“if”引导的用于表达假想的未来情况或现实条件下不可能出现的情况的句子。例如：If I were you, I'd take an umbrella.

句子 sentence

句子由单个或多个从句构成。

可分短语动词 separable phrasal verb

指可以将小品词置于名词或代词之后的短语动词，例如：

bring the subject up / bring it up。参见不可分短语动词。

简短回答 short answer

对一般疑问句作出的回答，仅使用主语和助动词。例如：Yes, I do.

简短问句 short question

仅由助动词和主语构成的问句，在对话中用于表示对某个话题感兴趣。例如：Is it?

一般时态 simple

一般时态中仅有一个主要动词；其肯定句中不需要助动词辅助。

单数 singular

是单词的一种形式，用于表示所指事物数量为一，例如：book。参见复数。

拖延语 stalling

对话中用于拖延时间，给自己留出思考时间的单词或短语。

例如：Let's see...

状态动词 (静态动词)

state verb (stative verb)

用于描述情况、想法或感情的动词，例如：seem、think、like。参见行为动词。

陈述句 statement

指提供信息的句子，区别于疑问句和祈使句。

重读 stress

用较大的声音读出一个单词中的某个音节或一个句子中的某个单词。参见强调。

主语 subject

句子中位于动词之前的人、事、地点等。

主格代词 subject pronoun

在句子中代替名词作主语的单词，例如：I、she、they。

主语疑问句 subject question

疑问词在句中作主语的问句，例如：Who invited you? 中的“who”。参见宾语疑问句。

从句 subordinate clause

附属子主句的部分，常由从属连词引导。

从属连词 subordinating

conjunction

用于连接两个重要性不相同的句子的单词，亦即从句与主句的连接词，例如：because、if。参见并列连词。

替代 substitution

指使用一个单词替换另一个单词的现象，例如：He's in the kitchen. 中的“he”。

后缀 suffix

置于词根后面用于改变单词词义的一组字母，例如：enjoyable 中的“-able”。参见前缀。

形容词最高级 superlative

adjective

用于表示一组事物中最极端状态的形容词，例如：best。参见形容词比较级。

音节 syllable

所有单词都由几个音节组成，且每个单词中都有一个元音，例如：teach（单音节）、teacher（双音节）。

时态 tense

用于体现动词动作发生时间的形式，例如：一般现在时、一般过去时。

第三条件句 / 假设语气 third conditional

由“if”引导的对过去某种情况及其结果进行假设的句子。

例如：If I had studied harder, I would have passed the exam.

时间标志 time marker

表示时间的单词或短语，例如：now、at the moment、tomorrow。

及物动词 transitive verb

指后面可以直接接宾语的动词。参见不及物动词。

不可数名词 uncountable

无法计数的单词，例如：water、money。参见可数名词。

动词 verb

表示某种状态或行为的单词，例如：stay、write。

元音 vowel

英文字母 a、e、i、o、u。参见辅音。

词性 word class

表示单词在句中的功能，例如：名词、动词、形容词都表示单词的词性。

词序 word order

指不同单词在句子中的位置，例如：主语一般在动词之前，观点形容词一般在事实形容词之前。

零冠词 zero article

指数数名词或不可数名词之前不加冠词的情况。

零条件句 zero conditional

由“if”或“when”引导的表示某种现实状况或常规行为的句子。例如：If it rains, the roads flood.

致谢

The publisher would like to thank:

Carrie Lewis for proofreading; Elizabeth Wise for indexing; Lili Bryant and Laura Sandford for editorial assistance; Tim Bowen for language advice; Chrissy Barnard, Amy Child, Alex Lloyd, and Michelle Staples for design assistance; Gus Scott for additional illustration.

All images are copyright DK. For more information, please visit www.dkimages.com.

DK 新视觉·人人学英语 英语语法全书

- DK 全球**首套**英语自学教程，**国际知名英语教学顾问**编审
- 创新视觉英语学习法，每册超过**1500个**图示，**看图**零压力**轻松学**
- 符合国内外英语考试规律，从零基础到精通，**雅思、托福、托业**轻松应考
- 学习语言的同时了解**文化思维**，**出国、求学、定居**，学这套就够了

北京大学外国语学院
中国人民大学外国语学院
北京语言大学
北京师范大学外文学院

王继辉教授
朱源教授
刘和平教授
王广州教授

名师力荐

系列说明

英语语法全书涵盖了国际语言学习标准——《欧洲语言教学与评估框架性共同标准》（CEFR）A1—C1的关键语点，建议配合《DK新视觉·人人学英语》系列1—4册教程使用，本表是本系列图书与雅思、托福、托业考试相应等级或成绩的对比表。

① 入门级



② 初级



③ 中级



④ 高级



CEFR	A1	A2	B1—lower B2	upper B2—C1
托福 笔试	0—250	250—340	340—520	520—580
托福 机考	0—30	30—60	60—200	200—240
托福 在线测试	0—10	10—20	20—70	70—95
雅思	0—2.5	2.5—3.5	3.5—5.5	5.5—7
托业	0—200	200—500	500—850	850—900

上架建议：英语学习

ISBN 978-7-5001-5624-6



9 787500 156246 >



www.dk.com



中译出版社官方微信

定价：99.80 元

[General Information]

书名=14467987

SS号=14467987